

## ISAS - INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL FOR ADVANCED STUDIES

## Nonlinear differential equations on non-compact domains

CANDIDATE

Simone Secchi

Supervisors

Prof. Antonio Ambrosetti

Thesis submitted for the degree of  $Doctor\ Philosophiae$  Academic Year 2001-2002

SISSA - SCUOLA ITERNAZIONALE SUPERIORE STUDI AVANZATI

> TRIESTE Via Beirut 2-4

TRIESTE



# Nonlinear differential equations on non-compact domains

CANDIDATE
Simone Secchi

Supervisors

Prof. Antonio Ambrosetti

Thesis submitted for the degree of  $Doctor\ Philosophiae$  Academic Year 2001-2002

Vorrei esprimere la mia gratitudine a tutti le persone che mi sono state vicine in questi anni: la mia famiglia, i miei amici, e tutti quelli che hanno discusso con me di matematica. Un ringraziamento particolare va al mio supervisore, il prof. Antonio Ambrosetti. Da lui ho imparato tutto quello che so sulla ricerca scientifica, e non solo le tecniche.

### Preface

The aim of this Ph.d. thesis is to present some very recent results concerning specific problems that share a common feature: a certain kind of *non-compactness*.

As explained in the first chapter, while *compact* problems have a well-established existence theory, much less is known for non-compact problems which have attracted a great attention in recent years. Compactness usually breaks down for topological reasons, for example because an equation should be solved on an unbounded domain. Hence the elementary tools of variational analysis cannot be applied, and one is compelled to find new ways out.

We present three possible approaches to non-compact problems:

- (1) Concentration-Compactness;
- (2) Perturbation methods;
- (3) Bifurcation theory.

The first one was introduced by P. L. Lions in 1984 ([65, 66]), and immediately adapted to a wide range of differential equations and, more generally, variational problems. As an application, we study here the existence of best constants for a class of Hardy–like inequalities in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . See section 1.7. The main result is Theorem 1.11. This result will appear in our forthcoming paper [79].

The second approach was introduced in recent years by Ambrosetti and Badiale (see [3, 4]) as a generalization of previous results by Ambrosetti, Coti Zelati and Ekeland ([7]). It is still a "young" tool, though several applications have already appeared in the literature. We present new results concerning the existence of closed geodesics on infinite cylinders, following our paper [78], and to some Schrödinger–like elliptic partial differential equations, following [10]. Moreover, applications to a different problem where a vector potential function appears as a perturbation term are described, following [32]. The main results are Theorems 21 and 23 in chapter 3, Theorem 25 in chapter 4 and Theorems 30 and 31 in chapter 5. More comments on the history and background material on these topics are contained in the next chapters.

VIII Preface

Finally, Bifurcation Theory has also been used to prove existence of non-trivial solutions for some classes of nonlinear elliptic equaitons on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . More recently, Fitzpatrick and Pejsachowicz have defined a degree for Fredholm maps to find more general bifurcation results for such equations on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Following [80], we discuss in chapter 6 an application of this degree to hamiltonian systems.

At last, let me acknowledge the support I have been given during the last four years at S.I.S.S.A. and the hospitality of the universities I have been visiting. In particular, I which to thank Dr. Silvia Cingolani (Politecnico di Bari), Prof. Charles Stuart (École Polytechnique Fédérale, Lausanne), and Prof. Michel Willem (Université Catholique de Louvain-la-Neuve).

Trieste

Simone Secchi August 2002

## Table of Contents

Part I The importance of being compact						
7	Wh	y compactness?	5			
-	1.1	Variational methods: how do they work?	5			
	1.2	A standard example of the use of compactness	6			
	1.3	When compactness breaks down	8			
	1.4	Critical points	9			
	1.5	Partial compactness: Palais–Smale and mountain passes	11			
	1.6	Critical exponents	13			
		1.6.1 The Brezis-Lieb lemma	16			
	1.7	The Concentration—Compactness principle	17			
	1.8	A Sobolev-Hardy type inequality	20			
— Pa	rt II	provided $\varepsilon$ is small enough				
2	The	e perturbation technique	29			
<b>∠</b> i		Where is Critical point theory going?	29			
3	Clo	sed geodesics on cylinders	37			
	3.1	Tools from differential geometry	37			
	3.2	Spheres	40			
	3.3	The general case	45			
	3.4	Isolated geodesics	47			
4	Semilinear Schrödinger equations					
	4.1	Preliminaries	52			
	4.2	Invertibility of $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}$ on $TZ^{\perp}$	55			
	4.3	The finite dimensional reduction	58			
	4.4	A Liapunov-Schmidt type reduction	58			
	$4.5^{\circ}$	The finite dimensional functional	61			
	4.6	The general case	63			
	4.7	Main results	66			

Х	T	able of Contents	
5	Mag 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6	gnetic fields  The variational framework  The invertibility of $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}$ on $(TZ^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$ The finite dimensional reduction  A Liapunov-Schmidt type reduction  The finite dimensional functional  Statement and proof of the main results	69 72 76 82 82 83 85
6		moclinic solutions of Hamiltonian systems  Basic definitions of the new topological degree  A concrete example  The general result	89 89 91 98
Re	feren	aces	101

## Notation

We collect here a list of notation commonly used in this thesis. We have tried to stick to the rule of ...with an obvious meaning of symbols.

- -X will be a real Banach space, and E a real Hilbert space.
- The Fréchet derivative of a differentiable function  $J: E \to \mathbb{R}$  at a point  $u \in E$  will be denoted by DJ(u). Sometimes, to have more readable formulas, we use J'(u), and similarly  $D^2J$  or J'' for second-order derivatives. Since DJ(u) is a linear map, we frequently omit brackets, viz. DJ(u)v stands for the action of the linear map DJ(u) on the vector v.
- Partial derivatives of functions  $u: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  will be denoted by either  $\partial_i u$ , or  $\partial u/\partial x_i$  when the name of the independent variable is important in the context.<sup>1</sup>
- The symbol  $\Delta$  stands for the ordinary Laplace operator: if  $u\colon \mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$  is a regular function, then

$$\Delta u = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x_i^2} u$$

or, equivalently, the trace of the Hessian matrix of u.

- It is always a delicate matter to fix notation for multiplication of real numbers and scalar products in Hilbert spaces. We are not going to say the ultimate word here. Inner products should be written as  $\langle u,v\rangle$  whenever possible, but we will use  $u \bullet v$  when dealing with geometric problems, and also  $u \cdot v$  from time to time.
- The complex conjugate of any number  $z \in \mathbb{C}$  will be denoted by  $\bar{z}$ .
- The real part of a number  $z \in \mathbb{C}$  will be denoted by Re z.
- The ordinary inner product between two vectors  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}^n$  will be denoted by  $a \cdot b$ .
- Integration with respect to the ordinary Lebesgue measure is denoted by  $\int \dots dx$ . This is a little abuse of notation, since nobody denotes this measure by x! A more correct  $\int \dots d\mathcal{L}$  shoud be used throughout, but we refrain from this "calvinism". Even worse, when no confusion can arise, we omit the symbol dx in integrals over  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Of course, the first choice is more intrinsic, though the second is often more explicit.

#### 2 Table of Contents

- C denotes a generic positive constant, which may vary inside a chain of inequalities.

- We use the Landau symbols. For example  $O(\varepsilon)$  is a generic function such that  $\limsup_{\varepsilon \to 0} [O(\varepsilon)/\varepsilon] < \infty$ , and  $o(\varepsilon)$  is a function such that  $\lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} [o(\varepsilon)/\varepsilon] = 0$ . Of course, a function can depend on several parameters, and its behavior is frequently different according to which parameter is considered. In these cases, we use a subscript to single out the parameter that "tends to..."

- The end of a proof is denoted by the symbol .2

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> This choice is not completely standard. I like it because the symbol & can be immediately seen inside a page.

The importance of being compact

## 1 Why compactness?

The rôle of compactness in Modern Analysis can hardly be overrated. From the basic theorem of Weierstrass stating that any continuous function on a compact space attains a maximum and a minimum, to the most advanced results in Calculus of Variations, compactness properties are exploited to prove existence of optimization problems, ordinary and partial differential equations, regularity theory, and much more.

## 1.1 Variational methods: how do they work?

Before we can actually launch ourselves into the study of non-compact problems, we need to develop some tools of modern<sup>1</sup> analysis. Since this is not a treatise on nonlinear functional analysis, we shall content ourselves with a brief survey of the main ideas. Probably the best example is that of elliptic partial differential equations (PDE's). While a nice feature of ordinary differential equations is that they can often be solved explicitly or numerically, the situation changes dramatically for PDE's. For example, take a bounded domain  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , and a right-hand side  $f \in C(\overline{\Omega})$ . It can be shown that the innocent-looking problem

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = f & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega
\end{cases}$$
(1.1)

has, in general,<sup>2</sup> no solution of class  $C^2$ . And although there are explicit representations of solutions when  $\Omega$  has a particular shape (a ball, a half-space), nevertheless these formulas are seldom useful for both theoretic and practical purposes.

The natural conclusion is that one should probably decide to weaken the concept of solution: this is the concept of weak solutions. Again, instead of presenting a thorough treatment of the general case, we prefer to focus on the

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The word "modern" is quite abused. Its meaning depends on the context. Roughly speaking, we might replace it by "functional–analytic", at least in this work.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> With respect to the dimension n and to the domain  $\Omega$ .

previous example. Assume  $u \in C^2(\Omega)$  is a classical solution of (1.1). Multiply both sides of the equation by any  $\varphi \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega)$ , and use the Green formula (see Appendix). Since u is zero on the boundary,

$$\int_{\Omega} \nabla u \cdot \nabla \varphi \, dx = \int_{\Omega} f \varphi \, dx. \tag{1.2}$$

Remark that (1.2) makes sense for any  $u \in L^1_{loc}(\Omega)$ . We could thus define distributional solutions  $u \in L^1_{loc}(\Omega)$ , but we will find the next concept more useful.

**Definition 1.1.** We say that  $u \in H^1(\Omega)$  is a weak solution of (1.1) if (1.2) is true for all  $\varphi \in H^1(\Omega)$ .

Now, we can present the core of the variational approach to problems like (1.1).

- (A) Look for a weak solution, and possibly for its uniqueness.
- (B) Prove that this solution is actually of class  $C^2$ .
- (C) Prove that any weak solution of class  $\mathbb{C}^2$  is a classical solution, i.e. (1.1) is true pointwise.

Step (C) is usually easy, whereas step (B) is rather difficult for non–linear equations. We won't go into details.

At this stage, how can we treat (A)? At a first glance, (1.2) is worse than the original equation, but we can remark that it can be seen from many viewpoints. For example as an orthogonality relation, or as the fact that the differential of the functional  $J\colon H^1_0(\Omega)\to \mathbb{R}$  is zero at u, where

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \int_{\Omega} f u dx.$$

The former viewpoint immediately reminds us of the Lax–Milgram theorem, which is indeed a powerful tool for linear elliptic equations (see [76]); the latter viewpoint opens the way to *critical point theory*, which is the art of finding zeroes of derivatives in Banach or Hilbert spaces. We will say some words in the next section, but we refer to the literature for extensive tretments ([2, 27, 68, 81]). The main advantage of this second approach is that it works for a wide class of semilinear elliptic equations.

## 1.2 A standard example of the use of compactness

At this stage it is not clear why compactness plays a rôle in all this stuff. To clarify the situation, we present a popular approach to some equations, i.e. constrained minimization.

**Theorem 1.1.** Let X be a reflexive Banach space and a functional  $J: X \to \mathbb{R}$  of class  $C^1$  be given. Let  $u \in X$  be a point of absolute minimum of J. Then

$$DJ(u) = 0 \quad in \ X^{\star},$$

where  $X^*$  is the dual space of X.

**Definition 1.2.** A functional  $J: X \to \mathbb{R}$  is called boudned from below on X if there exists a constant M > 0 such that

$$J(u) \ge M$$

for all  $u \in X$ .

**Definition 1.3.** A functional  $J: X \to \mathbb{R}$  is called coercive on X if

$$\lim_{\|u\| \to \infty} J(u) = +\infty.$$

**Theorem 1.2.** Let X be a reflexive Banach space. Let a functional  $J: X \to \mathbb{R}$  be

- 1. bounded from below on X;
- 2. weakly lower semicontinuous on X;
- 3. coercive on X.

Then J has a minimum.

*Proof.* Let  $\{u_n\}$  be a minimizing sequence for J, i.e.

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} J(u_n) = \inf_{u \in X} J(u) =: I.$$

In particular, since J is bounded from below,  $I > -\infty$ , and there exists a constant C such that  $|J(u_n)| \leq C$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since J is coercive,  $\{u_n\}$  is bounded in the norm of X. Since X is reflexive, bounded sequences in X are weakly relatively compact, so that, up to a subsequence,  $u_n \to u$  weakly as  $n \to \infty$ . By the semicontinuity,

$$I = \lim_{n \to \infty} J(u_n) \ge J(u),$$

thus proving that  $u \in X$  is a minimum point. Notice that the compactness assumptions has given us the element that has turned out to be the minimum of J.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> More generally, a functional  $J: X \to \mathbb{R}$  defined on the topological space X is coercive if the set  $\{x \in X \mid J(x) \le t\}$  is relatively compact in X for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Example 1.1. We come back to (1.1). Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a bounded domain, with smooth boundary  $\partial \Omega$ . Let  $H_0^1(\Omega)$  be the ordinary Sobolev space (see appendix). For a given  $f \in L^2(\Omega)$ , define

$$J \colon H_0^1(\Omega) \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$$
$$u \mapsto \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx - \int_{\Omega} fu \, dx.$$

It is easy to prove that J is weakly lower semicontinuous. Moreover, from the Poincaré inequality it follows that J is coercive and bounded from below. Hence it attains a minimum at some  $\bar{u} \in H^1_0(\Omega)$ . J is trivially of class  $C^1$ , and so  $DJ(\bar{u})=0$  by Theorem 1.1. By definition,  $\bar{u}$  is a weak solution of the linear problem

 $\begin{cases} -\Delta u = f & \text{in } \Omega \\ u = 0 & \text{on } \partial \Omega. \end{cases}$ 

Clearly, the previous example is almost trivial, but in some sense it is also the starting point of the variational theory of elliptic equations.

## 1.3 When compactness breaks down

We have seen that weak compactness plays an important rôle in establishing the existence of the minimum point. To get a more precise feeling, consider the following minimization problem:

$$\inf_{u \in H_0^1(\Omega) \setminus \{0\}} \frac{\int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 dx}{\int_{\Omega} |u|^2 dx}$$
 (1.3)

By the Lagrange multiplier rule, any minimizer satisfies an equation of the form

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta u = \lambda u & \text{in } \Omega \\ u = 0 & \text{on } \partial \Omega \end{cases}$$

for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ .

We can take a minimizing sequence  $\{u_n\}$ , and it is not restrictive to assume

$$\int_{\Omega} |u_n|^2 \, dx = 1 \quad \forall n \ge 1.$$

Again,  $\{u_n\}$  is bounded in  $H_0^1(\Omega)$ , and so, up to a subsequence, it converges strongly in  $L^2(\Omega)$  (see appendix) to some  $\bar{u}$ . Hence

$$\int_{\Omega} |u_n|^2 dx \to \int_{\Omega} |\bar{u}|^2 dx$$

and by weak lower semicontinuity,

$$\int_{\Omega} |\nabla \bar{u}|^2 dx \le \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla u_n|^2 dx.$$

This proves that  $\bar{u}$  is actually a minimum point of the Rayleigh-Ritz quotient (1.3).

But the compactness of the embedding  $H_0^1(\Omega) \subset L^2(\Omega)$  fails if  $\Omega$  is unbounded, for instance  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^n$ . Essentially, there are only three reasons why a weakly convergent sequence  $\{u_n\}$  in an infinite-dimensional space, for example in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , does not converge strongly<sup>4</sup> (see also [64, 89]):

- a) Oscillation. If  $\{u_n\}$  converges in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , then it has a subsequence converging almost everywhere in  $\Omega$ . But the sequence  $u_n(x) = e^{2\pi i n x}$  does not converge in  $L^2(-1/2, 1/2)$ , although it converges weakly to zero. Indeed,  $||u_n||_{L^2} = 1$ .
- b) Concentration. Let u be the characteristic function of (-1/2, 1/2), and let  $u_n(x) = n^{1/2}u(nx)$ . For all  $g \in C_0^{\infty}(-1/2, 1/2)$ , we have

$$\int_{(-1/2,1/2)} u_n g \, dx \to 0.$$

Since again  $||u_n||_{L^2} = 1$ , this implies that  $u_n \to 0$  in  $L^2(-1/2, 1/2)$ . In the sense of distributions,

$$u_n^2 \to \delta$$
,

where  $\delta$  is the Dirac measure at zero. See [90] for a study of distribution theory. We remark that  $u_n(x) \to 0$  for all x but x = 0.

c) Vanishing. Let u be the characteristic function of (-1/2, 1/2), and let  $u_n(x) = u(x-n)$ . As before,  $u_n \to 0$ . This time  $u_n(x) \to 0$  for all x.

We shall see later that, roughly speaking, minimizing sequence can be classified according to their behavior like a), b) or c).

In the next section, we present the basis of the modern variational approach to possibly non-compact problems.

### 1.4 Critical points

As we have seen before, one way to find solutions of differential equations is to find global minima of suitable maps J defined on Banach or Hilbert spaces. But global extrema are very often too much to be sought, and indeed their existence is far from being trivial. Moreover, the key point is to find points where the derivative of J vanishes, i.e. critical points of J.

Let E be a real Banach space with norm  $\|\cdot\|$  and  $J\colon E\to\mathbb{R}$  a  $C^1$  functional.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> It is trivially true that weakly and strongly convergent sequences coincide in finite dimensional vector spaces.

**Definition 1.4.** A critical point of J is a point  $u \in E$  such that DJ(u) = 0 in  $E^*$ . We say that  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  is a critical level for J if there exists a critical point u of J such that J(u) = c.

**Definition 1.5.** An operator  $A \colon E \to E$  is called variational if there exists a functional  $J \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$  such that A = DJ.

Hence a problem that can be translated into a functional equation like A(u) = 0 is called a variational problem if A is variational.

Example 1.2. Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a bounded domain with smooth boundary  $\partial \Omega$ , and let  $E = H_0^1(\Omega)$ . Let  $p: \Omega \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function such that

$$|p(x,s)| \le a_1 + a_2|s|^{\ell} \tag{1.4}$$

where  $\ell \leq \frac{n+2}{n-2}$  if n > 2,  $\ell$  is unrestricted if n = 1, 2. We assume, for simplicity, n > 2. Let  $P(x, s) = \int_0^s p(x, \tau) d\tau$ . Then

$$|P(x,s)| \le a_3|s| + a_4|s|^{\ell+1}$$
.

Since  $\ell+1 \leq 2^* = \frac{2n}{n-2}$ , we have from the Sobolev embedding  $E \subset L^{\ell+1}(\Omega)$  and it makes sense to define  $\phi \colon E \to \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\phi(u) = \int_{\Omega} P(x, u(x)) dx.$$

Moreover, it is easy to check that  $\phi \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$ , and

$$D\phi(u) \colon v \in E \mapsto \int_{\Omega} p(x, v(x)) dx.$$

We recall that since  $\Omega$  is bounded, the embedding  $E \subset L^{\ell+1}(\Omega)$  is compact, and hence the gradient of  $\phi$  is a compact map.

Define  $J \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$  by

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \phi(u).$$

If  $u \in E$  is a critical point of J, then

$$\int_{\Omega} \left[ \nabla u \cdot \nabla v - p(x, u(x)) v(x) \right] dx = 0 \quad \forall v \in H_0^1(\Omega).$$

Hence u is a weak solution of the semilinear Dirichlet boundary value problem

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta u = p(x, u) & \text{in } \Omega \\ u = 0 & \text{on } \partial \Omega. \end{cases}$$

If p is locally Hölder continuous, it can be proved that u is in fact a classical  $\mathbb{C}^2$ -solution.

A common strategy to find critical points is to look for *constrained extremum points* over some suitable submanifold.

**Definition 1.6.** Let M be a  $C^1$  Riemannian manifold modeled on a Hilbert space E, and let  $J \in C^1(M, \mathbb{R})$ . A critical point of J constrained on M is a point  $u \in M$  such that  $D_M J(u) = 0$ . Here  $D_M$  stands for the derivative of J on M.

Suppose M has codimension 1 in E. This means (see [61]) that there exists a functional  $g \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$  such that

$$M = \{ u \in E \colon g(u) = 0 \}$$

and  $Dg(u) \neq 0$  for all  $u \in M$ . The tangent space to M at u is given by

$$T_u M = \{ v \in E \mid Dg(u)v = 0 \}$$

and a critical point of J on M is a point  $u \in M$  such that DJ(u)v = 0 for all  $v \in T_uM$ . Hence u satisfies

$$DJ(u) = \lambda Dg(u)$$

for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ . This is the Lagrange multiplier rule.

Example 1.3. By considering  $J: H_0^1(\Omega) \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} |u|^2 dx,$$

we can look for critical points constrained on  $\overline{B} = \{u \in H_0^1(\Omega) \mid \int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 dx \leq 1\}$ . It is easy to show that  $J_{|\overline{B}}$  has a maximum u, which solves by the above

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta u = \lambda u & \text{in } \Omega \\ u = 0 & \text{on } \partial \Omega. \end{cases}$$

The number  $\lambda$  is the first eigenvalue of  $-\Delta$  on  $H_0^1(\Omega)$ .

## 1.5 Partial compactness: Palais–Smale and mountain passes

As a rule, to identify a minimum, one constructs a minimizing sequence, and tries to prove that it converges (up to a subsequence, if necessary). In the previuos examples, this was true because of the compact Sobolev embedding. When this tool is no longer available, the approach must be refined. Actually, relative compactness of all bounded sequences is too much.

Definition 1.7 (Palais-Smale sequences). Let E be a Banach space, and let  $J \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$  be a given functional. We say that J satisfies the Palais-Smale condition at level  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $(PS)_c$  for short, if every sequence  $\{u_k\}$  in E such that  $J(u_k) \to c$  and  $DJ(u_k) \to 0$  in  $E^*$  is relatively compact in E.

Clearly, this is a weaker considition than compactness itself, but it is often enough in Critical Point Theory. For the sake of completeness, we remind of the fact that several conditions like (PS) have been introduced over the past years, conditions that cover even weker situations. It is not our purpose to write a treatise on this subject, and we refer to the huge literature for details.

In 1973, Ambrosetti and Rabinowitz ([11]) proved the following theorem.

Theorem 1.3 (Mountain pass). Let J be a  $C^1$  functional on a Banach space X. Suppose

- (i) there exist a neighborhood U of 0 in X and a constant  $\varrho$  such that  $J(u) \geq \varrho$  for every u on the boundary of U,
- (ii)  $J(0) < \varrho$  and  $J(v) < \varrho$  for some  $v \notin U$ .

Set

$$c = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \max_{w \in P} J(w) \ge \varrho,$$

where  $\mathcal{P}$  denotes the class of continuous paths joining 0 to v. The conclusion is: there is a sequence  $\{u_j\}$  in X such that  $J(u_j) \to c$  and  $DJ(u_j) \to 0$  in  $X^*$ . If J satisfies  $(PS)_c$ , then c is a critical level for J.

This result is very useful to find critical points of J even when J is strongly undefined, i.e. when  $\inf_E J = -\infty$  and  $\sup_E J = +\infty$ . The geometry of J is that 0 is local minimum, but not a global one. See the figure below, showing a profile with two maxima, one local minimum, and a path that a clever walker should follow to minimize effort.

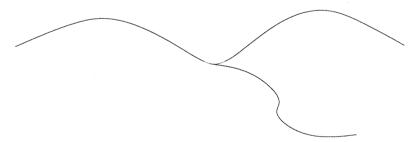


Fig. 1.1. The mountain-pass geometry

Needless to say, the difficult task is to prove that J satisfies the Palais–Smale condition at the "right" level. Good functionals satisfy it all levels, but many others satisfy it only in subregions of  $\mathbb{R}$ .

## 1.6 Critical exponents

Apart from unboundedness of the domain, another source of non-compactness is the presence of the *critical Sobolev exponent* (see the Appendix). The embedding  $H_0^1(\Omega) \subset L^{2^*}(\Omega)$  fails to be compact even if  $\Omega$  is bounded.<sup>5</sup> Hence differential equations with a critical behavior appear to be very interesting. Indeed, they can have only trivial solutions, as the following example shows.

Example 1.4. Consider

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = |u|^{q-1}u & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega,
\end{cases}$$
(1.5)

where  $\Omega$  is a bounded domain in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . For  $x \in \partial \Omega$ , we denote by  $\nu_x$  the outward normal vector to  $\Omega$ .

**Proposition 1.1.** If  $x \cdot \nu_x \geq 0$  on  $\partial \Omega$ , then (1.5) has only the trivial solution  $u \equiv 0$ , whenever  $q \geq \frac{n+2}{n-2}$ .

The proof is an immediate consequence of the next result, due to Pohozaev.

Lemma 1.1. If u is a smooth solution of

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = p(x, u) & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega,
\end{cases}$$
(1.6)

then

$$n\int_{\Omega} P(u(x)) dx + \frac{2-n}{2} \int_{\Omega} u(x) p(u(x)) dx = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\partial \Omega} (x \cdot \nu_x) \left| \frac{\partial u}{\partial \nu} \right|^2 d\sigma.$$

Probably the first, but surely the most impressive paper to study exstensively the loss of compactness in differential equations is that by Brezis and Nirenberg ([23]). In a previous section, we showed that equations on unbounded domains usually present additional difficulties, due to the loss of compact embedding in  $L^p$  spaces. A different phenomenon leading to "noncompact" problems is that of *limiting Sobolev exponent*, for which the embedding is not compact, even on bounded domains.

In their paper, Brezis and Nirenberg consider a bounded domain  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and the critical elliptic equation

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = u^p + \lambda u & \text{in } \Omega \\
u > 0 & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega,
\end{cases}$$
(1.7)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> See the appendix.

where p = (n+2)/(n-2),  $n \ge 3$ , and  $\lambda$  is a real constant. We remark explicitly that the same problem with subcritical exponent is completely solvable:

Theorem 1.4. Assume that  $\Omega$  is a bounded domain, and 2 . Then the problem

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = u^p + \lambda u & \text{in } \Omega \\
u > 0 & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \partial\Omega,
\end{cases}$$
(1.8)

has a nontrivial solution if and only if  $\lambda > -\lambda_1(\Omega)$ , the first eigenvalue of  $-\Delta$  in  $H_0^1(\Omega)$ .

Proof. See [90] \*

Their main result is

**Theorem 1.5.** Assume  $n \geq 4$ . Then for every  $\lambda \in (0, \lambda_1)$ , there exists a solution of (1.7). Here  $\lambda_1$  is the first eigenvalue of  $-\Delta$  with Dirichlet boundary conditions on  $\Omega$ .

Since their argument has opened the way to hundreds of papers on noncompact problems, we sketch the main ideas. First of all, they choose a variationa approach, and set

$$S_{\lambda} = \inf_{\substack{u \in H_0^1(\Omega) \\ \|u\|_{L^p} = 1}} \int_{\Omega} \left( |\nabla u|^2 - \lambda |u|^2 \right) dx,$$

so that  $S_0$  corresponds to the best constant in the Sobolev embedding theorem  $H_0^1(\Omega) \subset L^{p+1}(\Omega)$  When  $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^n$ , it was proved by Aubin and Talenti that  $S_0$  is attained by the functions

$$U_{\varepsilon}(x) = C_{\varepsilon}(\varepsilon + |x|^2)^{-(n-2)/2}$$

where  $C_{\varepsilon} > 0$  is a normalization constant.

The second step is to show a a priori existence result:

**Lemma 1.2.** If  $S_{\lambda} < S$ , then  $S_{\lambda}$  is attained.

*Proof.* Let  $\{u_j\}$  be a minimizing sequence in  $H_0^1$ , i.e.

$$\int_{\Omega} |u_j|^{p+1} \, dx = 1,\tag{1.9}$$

$$\int_{\Omega} |\nabla u_j|^2 dx - \lambda \int_{\Omega} |u_j|^2 dx = S_{\lambda} + o(1) \quad \text{as } j \to \infty.$$
 (1.10)

Up to a subsequence,

$$u_j \rightharpoonup u$$
 weakly in  $H_0^1(\Omega)$ ,

$$u_i \to u$$
 strongly in  $L^2(\Omega)$ ,

$$u_i \to u$$
 almost everywhere in  $\Omega$ ,

with  $||u||_{L^{p+1}} \le 1$ . Set  $v_j = u_j - u$ . Hence we have  $||\nabla u_j||_{L^2} \ge S_0$ . It follows that  $\lambda ||u||_{L^2}^2 \ge S_0 - S_\lambda > 0$ , and so  $u \not\equiv 0$ . By construction,

$$\|\nabla u\|_{L^{2}}^{2} + \|\nabla v_{j}\|_{L^{2}}^{2} - \lambda \|u\|_{L^{2}}^{2} = S_{\lambda} + o(1)$$
(1.11)

since  $v_i \rightarrow 0$  weakly. By the Brezis-Lieb Lemma (see the next section),

$$||u+v_j||_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} = ||u||_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} + ||v_j||_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} + o(1).$$

Thus we have

$$1 = ||u||_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} + ||v_j||_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} + o(1)$$

and therefore

$$1 \le ||u||_{L^{p+1}}^2 + ||v_j||_{L^{p+1}}^2 + o(1)$$

which leads to

$$1 \le ||u||_{L^{p+1}}^2 + \frac{1}{S_0} ||\nabla v_j||_{L^{p+1}}^2 + o(1).$$
 (1.12)

The following claim can be proved by distinguishing the cases (i)  $S_{\lambda} > 0$  and (ii)  $S_{\lambda} \leq 0$ :

$$||\nabla u||_{L^2}^2 - \lambda ||u||_{L^2}^2 \le S_\lambda ||u||_{L^{p+1}}^2.$$

Now the proof is complete, since u is not identically zero.

Hence we should compare  $S_{\lambda}$  and  $S_0$ , and this is done by some *cut-off* procedure:

Lemma 1.3. We have

$$S_{\lambda} < S_0$$
 for all  $\lambda > 0$ .

*Proof.* The task is to estimate the ratio

$$Q_{\lambda}(u) = \frac{\int_{\Omega} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \lambda \int_{\Omega} |u|^2 dx}{\left(\int_{\Omega} |u|^{p+1} dx\right)^{2/(p+1)}}.$$

This can be done with the functions

$$u(x) = u_{\varepsilon}(x) = \frac{\varphi(x)}{(\varepsilon + |x|)^{(n-2)/2}},$$

where  $\varphi$  is  $C_0^{\infty}$  function concentrated near the origin of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . After some calculations, it is possible to prove that  $Q_{\lambda}(u_{\varepsilon}) < 0$  if  $\varepsilon$  is small enough.

Now, a solution of (1.7) is found by rescaling any minimizer in Lemma 1.2. By the same token, the following result can be established.

#### Lemma 1.4. Let

$$S_0 = \inf\{\|u\|_2^2 \mid (u \in H_0^1(\Omega)) \land (\|u\|_{2^*}^{2^*} = 1)\}$$

be the best Sobolev constant. Then for any

$$c < \frac{1}{n} S_0^{n/2}$$

the functional

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Omega} (|\nabla u|^2 - \lambda |u|^2) \, dx - \frac{1}{2^*} \int_{\Omega} |u|^{2^*} \, dx$$

satisfies the  $(PS)_c$  condition.

More general situations can be studied by means of the *mountain-pass* theorem, for example

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta u = u^p + f(x, u) & \text{in } \Omega \\
u > 0 & \text{in } \Omega \\
u = 0 & \text{on } \Omega,
\end{cases}$$
(1.13)

where the main assumption of  $f \colon \Omega \times [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  is that

$$\lim_{u \to +\infty} \frac{f(x, u)}{u^p} = 0.$$

The case n=3 is more delicate, since the estimates in Lemma 1.3 are no longer true. Anyway, the following result is given.

**Theorem 1.6.** Assume  $\Omega$  is a ball. Then (1.7) has a solution if and only if  $\frac{1}{4}\lambda_1 < \lambda < \lambda_1$ .

#### 1.6.1 The Brezis-Lieb lemma

In this appendix we present a very useful result about convergence in  $L^p$  spaces. The situation is this: a bounded sequence  $\{u_n\}$  in  $L^p$  tends pointwise to some  $u \in L^p$ . If  $||u_n||_p \to ||u||_p$ , and p > 1, it is a consequence of the uniform convexity that  $u_n \to u$  strongly. Is it possible to precise the behavior of  $||u_n - u||_p$ ?

**Lemma 1.5 ([22]).** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and let  $\{u_n\}$  be a bounded sequence of  $L^p(\Omega)$  functions tending a.e. to  $u \in L^p$ . Then

$$||u||_p = \lim_{n \to \infty} (||u_n||_p - ||u_n - u||_p).$$

*Proof.* Let  $M = \sup_n ||u_n||_p < \infty$ . By the limit

$$\lim_{|s| \to \infty} \frac{|s+1|^p - |s|^p - 1}{|s|^p} = 0,$$

we see that for every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there is a constant  $C_{\varepsilon}$  such that

$$||s+1|^p - |s|^p - 1| < \varepsilon |s|^p + C_{\varepsilon} \quad \forall s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Hence, for all  $a,b \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$||a+b|^p - |a|^p - |b|^p| \le \varepsilon |a|^p + C_{\varepsilon} |b|^p.$$

Let now  $f_n = ||f_n|^p - |f_n - f|^p - |f|^p|$  and  $Z_n = \max\{0, f_n - \varepsilon |u_n - u|^p\}$ . We know that  $Z_n$  tends to zero a.e., and  $0 \le Z_n \le C_\varepsilon |f|^p$ . By the Dominated Convergence theorem,  $Z_n \to 0$  in  $L^1$ . But  $0 \le f_n \le \varepsilon |u_n - u|^p + Z_n$ , and so

$$||f_n||_1 \le \varepsilon ||u_n - u||_1 + ||Z_n||_1 \le 2^p M^p + ||Z_n||_1.$$

Finally, we deduce that  $||f_n||_1 \to 0$ .

## 1.7 The Concentration-Compactness principle

As seen before, there are some evident reasons why a bounded sequence in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  cannot converge strongly. Roughly speaking, we can say  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is very large, and sequences can "move off" to infinity, or concentrate at finite points even though they are constrained to minimize some functional. Hence it would be desirable to have some tool to work out these features, to regain compactness. In this section we briefly survey the celebrated Concentration—Compactness principle by P. L. Lions ([65, 66]). A completely different strategy will be one of the most important topics of our thesis in the next part.

Theorem 1.7 (Locally compact case). Let  $\{\varrho_n\}$  be a sequence in  $L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that

- (1)  $\varrho_n \geq 0$  almost everywhere
- (2)  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho_n(x) dx = \lambda > 0.$

Then  $\{\varrho_n\}$  has a subsequence  $\{\varrho_{n_k}\}$  satisfying one of the following properties:

- Compactness. There is a sequence  $\{y_k\}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$(\forall \varepsilon > 0)(\exists R > 0): \int_{y_k + B_R} \varrho_{n_k}(x) dx \ge \lambda - \varepsilon.$$

- Vanishing.

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \sup_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} \int_{y+B_R} \varrho_{n_k}(x) \, dx = 0 \quad \forall R > 0.$$

- Dichotomy. There exists  $\alpha \in (0, \lambda)$  such that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there are an integer  $k_0 \geq 1$  and  $\rho_k^1, \varrho_k^2 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that

  - The energy  $k_0 \ge 1$  and  $\rho_k, \varepsilon_k \le 2$ .

    1.  $\varrho_k^1, \ \varrho_k^2 \ge 0$ 2.  $\|\varrho_{n_k} (\varrho_k^1 + \rho_k^2)\|_{L^1} \le \varepsilon$ 3.  $|\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho_k^1(x) \, dx \alpha| \le \varepsilon$ 4.  $|\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \varrho_k^2(x) \, dx \alpha| \le \varepsilon$ 5. dist(supp  $\varrho_k^1$ , supp  $\varrho_k^2$ )  $\to +\infty$  as  $k \to +\infty$ .

The following result is often useful to exclude the vanishing case.

Lemma 1.6 ([65]). Let  $1 , <math>1 \le q < \infty$ , and  $N \ge 1$  an integer. When N > p, we suppose that  $q \neq p^*$ . Let  $\{u_k\}$  be a bounded sequence in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that  $\{|\nabla u_k|\}$  is bounded in  $L^p(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ; if there is R>0 such that

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \sup_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} \int_{B(y,R)} |u_k(x)| \, dx = 0,$$

then  $u_k \to 0$  in  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^n)$  provided that  $\min\{q, p^*\} < r < \max\{q, p^*\}$ .

To present the result about the non-locally compact case, i.e. when some critical exponent is involved, we need some preliminaries.

**Definition 1.8.**  $\mathcal{M}(\Omega)$  denotes the space of bounded Radon measures on the open set  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , endowed with the norm

$$||\mu|| = \sup_{\substack{u \in C_0(\Omega) \\ ||u||_{\infty} = 1}} |\mu(u)|.$$

we say that a sequence  $\{\mu_k\}$  in  $\mathcal{M}(\Omega)$  converges weakly<sup>6</sup> to  $\mu$  if

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \mu_k(u) = \mu(u) \quad \forall u \in C_0(\Omega).$$

and  $\{\mu_k\}$  converges tightly to  $\mu$  if

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \mu_k(u) = \mu(u) \quad \forall u \in L^{\infty}(\Omega).$$

Theorem 1.8 (Critical case). Let  $m \ge 1$  be an integer,  $p \in [1, n/m)$ , and denote

$$p^{*m} = \frac{np}{n - mp}$$
$$\theta = 1 - \frac{mp}{n}.$$

Let

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> The reader may remark that this convergence should be rather called weak\*. Anyway, such a simplification is customary in Probability theory.

$$S(m, p, n) = \inf_{\substack{u \in D^{m, p}(\mathbb{R}^n) \\ ||u||_{p^*m} = 1}} ||D^m u||_p^p.$$

Assume the sequence  $\{u_k\}$  in  $D^{m,p}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  converges weakly to  $u \in D^{m,p}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , and that there exist two bounded measures  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  such that

$$|D^m u_k| \rightharpoonup \mu \quad in \ \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{R}^n)$$
  
 $|u_k|^{p^{*m}} \rightharpoonup \lambda \quad tightly.$ 

Then

1. There exist a set J, at most countable, some points  $\{x_j\}_{j\in J}$ , and some real numbers  $\{a_j\}_{j\in J}$  such that  $a_j > 0$  for all  $j\in J$  and

$$\lambda = |u|^{p^{*m}} + \sum_{j \in J} a_j \delta_{x_j}.$$

2. There exist real numbers  $b_j > 0$  such that  $S(m, p, n)a_i^{\theta} \leq b_j$  and

$$|D^m u|^p + \sum_{j \in J} b_j \delta_{x_j} \le \mu,$$
$$\sum_{j \in J} a_j^{\theta} < \infty.$$

3. If  $v \in D^{m,p}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $|D^m(u_k+v)|^p \rightharpoonup \tilde{\mu}$  in  $\mathcal{M}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , then  $\tilde{\mu}-\mu \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and

$$|D^m(u+v)|^p + \sum_{j \in J} b_j \delta_{x_j} \le \tilde{\mu}.$$

4. If  $u \equiv 0$  and  $0 < \mu(\mathbb{R}^n) < S(m, p, n)\lambda(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , then J is a singleton, and there exist C > 0,  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$\lambda = C\delta_{x_0}, \qquad \mu = S(m, p, n)C^{1+\theta}\delta_{x_0}.$$

Finally, we present a recent improvement appearing in [17], which unifies the concentration at infinity and the concentration at finite points. Despite its simple appearence, it can be adapted to a lot of different situations.

**Theorem 1.9.** Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  an open set, and let  $1 \leq p < \infty$ . Assume that

- a)  $\{u_k\}$  is a bounded sequence in  $L^p(\Omega)$ ;
- b)  $u_k \to u$  a.e. in  $\Omega$ ,
- c)  $|u_k u|^p \rightharpoonup \nu \text{ in } \mathcal{M}(\Omega),$

and define

$$u_{\infty} = \lim_{R \to \infty} \limsup_{k \to \infty} \int_{|x| > R} |u_k|^p dx.$$

Then it follows that

$$\limsup_{k \to \infty} |u_k|_p^p = |u_k|_p^p + ||\nu|| + \nu_{\infty}.$$

*Proof.* 1) We write  $v_k = u_k - u$ . According to the Brezis-Lieb lemma, we have, for every non-negative  $h \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega)$ ,

$$\int h|u|^p dx = \lim_{k \to \infty} \left( \int h|u_k|^p dx - \int h|v_k|^p dx \right).$$

It follows that

$$|u_k|^p \rightharpoonup |u|^p + \nu \quad \text{in } \mathcal{M}(\Omega).$$
 (1.14)

2) For R > 1, let  $\Psi_R \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  be such that  $\Psi_R(x) = 1$  for |x| > R + 1,  $\Psi_R(x) = 0$  for |x| < R, and  $0 \le \Psi_R \le 1$  on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . It is easy to check that

$$u_{\infty} = \lim_{R \to \infty} \limsup_{k \to \infty} \int \Psi_R |u_k|^p dx.$$

3) For every R > 1, we have by (1.14)

$$\begin{split} \limsup_{k \to \infty} |u_k|^p \, dx &= \limsup_{k \to \infty} \left( \int \varPsi_R^p |u_k|^p \, dx + \int (1 - \varPsi_R^p) |u_k|^p \, dx \right) \\ &= \limsup_{k \to \infty} \int \varPsi_R^p |u_k|^p \, dx + \int (1 - \varPsi_R^p) |u|^p \, dx + \int (1 - \varPsi_R^p) \, d\nu(x). \end{split}$$

When  $R \to \infty$ , we obtain

$$\limsup_{k \to \infty} \int |u_k|^p dx = \nu_{\infty} + \int |u|^p dx + \int d\nu(x)$$
$$= \nu_{\infty} + |u|_p^p + ||\nu||.$$

£.

Remark 1.1. Clearly, the terms  $||\nu||$  and  $\nu_{\infty}$  are responsible for lack of compactness. The rôle of the latter is evident, while the first measures the concentration of the sequence  $\{u_k\}$  at finite points.

## 1.8 A Sobolev-Hardy type inequality

In this section we use Theorem 1.19 to find the best constant of a Hardy-type inequality. We follow [79]. Set  $\mathbb{R}^N = \mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^{N-k}$ , with  $2 \leq k \leq N$ , and write  $x = (x', z) \in \mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^{N-k}$ . For given numbers q, s such that 1 < q < N,  $0 \leq s \leq q$ , and s < k, set  $q_*(s, N, q) = \frac{q(N-s)}{N-q}$ . We also write  $q_*(s)$  instead of  $q_*(s, N, q)$ .

We are able to proof the following statement, which extends a previous result contained in [13].

**Theorem 1.10.** Let  $2 \le k \le N$ ,  $1 \le p < k$ ,  $\alpha + k > 0$ ,  $u \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Then

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x'|^\alpha \, dx \le \frac{p^p}{(\alpha+k)^p} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^p |x'|^{\alpha+p} \, dx. \tag{1.15}$$

Moreover, the constant  $\frac{p^p}{(\alpha+k)^p}$  is optimal.

It is convenient to state the following Lemma.

**Lemma 1.7.** If  $1 and <math>\alpha + N > 0$ , then

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x|^\alpha \, dx \le \frac{p^p}{(\alpha + N)^p} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x \cdot \nabla u|^p |x|^\alpha \, dx$$
$$\le \frac{p^p}{(\alpha + N)^p} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^p |x|^{\alpha + N} \, dx$$

for all  $u \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Moreover, the constant  $\frac{p^p}{(\alpha+N)^p}$  is the best possible.

*Proof.* We approximate  $x\mapsto |x|^{\alpha}$  by the "sequence"  $x\mapsto (|x|^2+\varepsilon)^{\alpha/2}$ , so that

$$\operatorname{div}[|x|^{\alpha}x] = (\alpha + N)|x|^{\alpha},$$

at least in a weak sense. Moreover, for all  $u \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \operatorname{div}[|u|^p |x|^\alpha x] \, dx = 0.$$

We get from the Hölder inequality that

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x|^\alpha dx \le \frac{p^p}{(\alpha + N)^p} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x \cdot \nabla u| |u|^{p-1} |x|^\alpha dx$$

$$\le \frac{p^p}{(\alpha + N)^p} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^{(p-1)p'} |x|^\alpha dx \right)^{1/p'} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x \cdot \nabla u|^p |x|^\alpha dx \right)^{1/p}$$

$$= \frac{p^p}{(\alpha + N)^p} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x|^\alpha dx \right)^{1-1/p} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x \cdot \nabla u|^p |x|^\alpha dx \right)^{1/p}.$$

For the optimality of the constant, we refer to [79].

*Proof* (of Theorem 10). Consider first the case p = 2. Then

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k} \times \mathbb{R}^{k}} |\nabla u|^{2} |x'|^{\alpha+2} dx \ge \int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} dz \int_{\mathbb{R}^{k}} |\nabla_{x'} u|^{2} |x'|^{\alpha+2} dx'$$

$$\ge \frac{(\alpha+2)^{2}}{4} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} dz \int_{\mathbb{R}^{k}} |u|^{2} |x'|^{\alpha} dx'$$

$$= \frac{(\alpha+2)^{2}}{4} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |u|^{2} |x'|^{\alpha} dx$$

where we have used the previous Lemma. Choose now

$$u: (x', z) \mapsto v(x')w(z),$$

where  $v \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k)$  and  $w \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^{N-k})$ . In the rest of the proof, we identify the gradients of v and w with two vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ :

$$\begin{cases} \nabla v = \left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial x'}, 0\right) \\ \nabla w = \left(0, \frac{\partial w}{\partial z}\right). \end{cases}$$

Hence,  $\nabla v \perp \nabla w$ . By definition,

$$\begin{split} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^2 |x'|^{\alpha+2} \, dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 |x'|^{\alpha} \, dx} &= \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha+2} \left( |\nabla v|^2 |w|^2 + |v|^2 |\nabla w|^2 \right) \, dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha} |v|^2 |w|^2 \, dx} \\ &= \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+2} |\nabla v|^2 \, dx'}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |v|^2 |x'|^{\alpha} \, dx'} + \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+2} |v|^2 \, dx'}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha} |v|^2 \, dx'} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} |\nabla w|^2}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} |w|^2}. \end{split}$$

We deduce

$$\inf_{u \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n) \setminus \{0\}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^2 |x'|^{\alpha+2} dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 |x'|^{\alpha} dx}$$

$$\leq \inf_{\substack{v \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^k) \setminus \{0\} \\ w \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^N) \setminus \{0\}}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha+2} \left(|w|^2 |\nabla v|^2 + |v|^2 |\nabla w|^2\right) dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^2 |v|^2 |w|^2 dx}$$

$$\leq \inf_{\substack{v \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^N) \setminus \{0\} \\ \text{of } \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+2} |\nabla v|^2 dx}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+2} |\nabla v|^2 dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+2} |\nabla v|^2 dx} = \frac{(\alpha+2)^2}{4}$$

because

$$\inf_{w \in C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^{N-k}) \setminus \{0\}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |\nabla w|^2 dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} |w|^2 dx} = 0$$

and the optimality result contained in the previous Lemma.

The general case  $p \neq 2$  is slightly more involved, since we work in a non-hilbertian setting. The validity of the inequality is checked as before. Anyway, the optimality of  $p^p/(\alpha+k)^p$  requires the following modifications. Split again u(x) = v(x')w(z), so that

$$\frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^p |x'|^{\alpha+p} \ dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x'|^{\alpha} \ dx} = \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha+p} \left( |\nabla v|^2 |w|^2 + |\nabla w|^2 |v|^2 \right)^{p/2} \ dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha} |v|^p |w|^p \ dx}.$$

We introduce the map

$$f: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$$
  
 $(s,t) \mapsto (s^2 + t^2)^{p/2}$ .

Clearly f is a convex function. For each  $\varepsilon \in (0,1)$ , we see that

$$\begin{split} f(s,t) &= f\left(\varepsilon(\frac{s}{\varepsilon},0) + (1-\varepsilon)(0,\frac{t}{1-\varepsilon})\right) \leq \\ &\varepsilon f\left(\frac{s}{\varepsilon},0\right) + (1-\varepsilon)f\left(0,\frac{t}{1-\varepsilon}\right) = \varepsilon\frac{s^p}{\varepsilon^p} + (1-\varepsilon)\frac{t^p}{(1-\varepsilon)^p}. \end{split}$$

Hence

$$\frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^p |x'|^{\alpha+p} \, dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^p |x'|^{\alpha} \, dx} \leq \varepsilon^{1-p} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+p} |\nabla v|^p \, dx'}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha} |v|^p \, dx'} + (1-\varepsilon)^{1-p} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} |\nabla w|^p \, dz}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^{N-k}} |w|^p \, dz}.$$

We deduce that

$$\inf_{u \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)\backslash\{0\}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^p |x'|^{\alpha+p} \, dx}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x'|^{\alpha} |u|^p \, dx} \leq \varepsilon^{1-p} \inf_{v \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)\backslash\{0\}} \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha+p} |\nabla v|^p \, dx'}{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} |x'|^{\alpha} |v|^p \, dx'}.$$

We conclude by letting  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

It is a natural question if the best constant C in (1.15) is attained. More precisely, let

$$S = \inf \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}^N} |\nabla u|^q \, dx \colon u \in D^{1,q}(\mathbb{R}^N) \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}^N} \frac{|u(x',z)|^{q_\star(s)}}{|x'|^s} \, dx' dz = 1 \right\}. \tag{1.16}$$

Here S depends on all the constants of the problem, i.e. k, q, s and N. For s=0, it reduces to the best Sobolev constant, and to the best Hardy constant for s=q and k=N. It is well-known that the best Hardy constant is never attained. However, the following theorem states that in the whole family of inequalities between the Sobolev and the Hardy's one, the latter is the only negative case.

**Theorem 1.11.** Assume  $1 \le k \le N$ , 1 < q < N, x = (x', z),  $0 \le s < q$  and s < k. Then the extremal problem (1.16) attains its infimum at a function  $u \in D^{1,q}(\mathbb{R}^N)$  which satisfies

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^N} |\nabla u|^q \, dx = S, \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}^N} \frac{|u(x',z)|^{q_*(s)}}{|x'|^s} \, dx' dz = 1.$$

*Proof.* For a standard proof using Theorems 7 and 8, we refer to [14]. Here we give a rather short proof by means of a suitable modification of Theorem 9.

Let  $\{u_n\}$  be a minimizing sequence for S. Hence  $\{u_n\}$  is bounded in  $D^{1,q}(\mathbb{R}^N)$ . By Remark 7 in [14], it is known that we can always find sequences  $\lambda_n > 0$  and  $\zeta_n \in \mathbb{R}^{N-k}$  such that the new sequence  $\{v_n\}$  defined by

$$v_n(x',z) = \lambda_n^{\frac{N-q}{q}} u_n(\lambda_n x', \lambda_n(z-\zeta_n))$$

is still a minimizing sequence for S, and moreover

$$\sup_{\zeta \in \mathbb{R}^{N-k}} \int_{|z-\zeta| < 1} \int_{|x'| < 1} \frac{|v_n|^{q_+(s)}}{|x'|^s} \, dx = \int_{|z| < 1} \int_{|x'| < 1} \frac{|v_n|^{q_+(s)}}{|x'|^s} \, dx = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Hence, without loss of generality, we can replace  $u_n$  by  $v_n$ . By the Sobolev embedding theorem, we may also assume, up to a subsequence, that

$$v_n \rightharpoonup v \quad \text{in } D^{1,q}(\mathbb{R}^N)$$

$$|\nabla (v_n - v)|^q \to \mu \quad \text{in } \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{R}^N)$$

$$\left|\frac{v_n - v}{|x'|^{s/q_*(s)}}\right|^{q_*(s)} \to \nu \quad \text{in } \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{R}^N)$$

$$v_n \to v \quad \text{a.e. in } \mathbb{R}^N$$

We introduce now the two quantities

$$\mu_{\infty} = \lim_{R \to +\infty} \limsup_{n \to \infty} \int_{|x| \ge R} |\nabla v_n|^q dx$$

$$\nu_{\infty} = \lim_{R \to +\infty} \limsup_{n \to \infty} \int_{|x| \ge R} \frac{|v_n|^{q_{\bullet}(s)}}{|x'|^s} dx.$$

From the definition of S we deduce

$$\nu_{\infty}^{q/q_{*}(s)} \leq S^{-1}\mu_{\infty} 
\|\nu\|^{q/q_{*}(s)} \leq S^{-1}\|\mu\| 
\|\nabla v\|_{q}^{q} + \|\mu\| + \mu_{\infty} \leq S 
\left|\frac{v}{|x'|^{s/q_{*}(s)}}\right|_{q_{*}(s)}^{q_{*}(s)} + \|\nu\| + \nu_{\infty} = 1.$$

Hence,

$$\begin{split} S &\geq |\nabla v|_q^q + ||\mu|| + \mu_\infty \geq |\nabla v|_q^q + S||\nu||^{q/q_\star(s)} + S\nu_\infty^{q/q_\star(s)} \\ &\geq S \left| \frac{v}{|x'|^{s/q_\star(s)}} \right|_{q_\star(s)}^{q_\star(s)} + S||\nu||^{q/q_\star(s)} + S\nu_\infty^{q/q_\star(s)}, \end{split}$$

and finally

$$\left| \frac{v}{|x'|^{s/q_{\star}(s)}} \right|_{q_{\star}(s)}^{q_{\star}(s)} + \|\nu\|^{q/q_{\star}(s)} + \nu_{\infty}^{q/q_{\star}(s)} \le 1.$$

This implies that  $\|\nu\|$ ,  $\nu_{\infty}$  and  $\left|\frac{v}{|x'|^{s/q_{\star}(s)}}\right|_{q_{\star}(s)}^{q_{\star}(s)}$  are all equal to either 0 or 1. But  $\nu_{\infty}=0$ , since it follows from the choice of  $\lambda_n$  and  $\zeta_n$  that  $\nu_{\infty}\leq 1/2$ . Suppose that v=0. Then

$$1 = \|\nu\|^{q/q_*(s)} = S^{-1}\|\mu\|.$$

Hence, for all open subsets  $\omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\nu(\omega) \leq \nu(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , and this immediately implies that  $\nu$  and  $\mu$  are concentrated on a single point  $x_0 = (x_0', z_0) \in \mathbb{R}^k \times \mathbb{R}^{N-k}$ . Once again, by the choice of  $\lambda_n$  and  $\zeta_n$ , there is a number r > 0 such that  $|x_0| = \max\{|x_0'|, |z_0|\} \geq r$ . We then reach the contradiction

$$0 = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{|x-x_0| < r} \frac{|v_n|^{q_*(s)}}{|x'|^s} \, dx = ||\nu|| = 1.$$

The only possibility is that  $||\nu|| = 0$ , so that

$$\frac{|v|^{q_{\star}(s)}}{|x'|^s} dx = 1.$$

In other words, v is a minimizer for S.

Remark 1.2. The previous theorems are contained in the forthcoming paper [79], where we also prove that all minimizers corresponding to the best constant have a rather precise symmetric shape.

...provided  $\varepsilon$  is small enough



# 2 The perturbation technique

## 2.1 Where is Critical point theory going?

Over the last two decades, a lot of attention has been paid to *Critical point theory*, because of its flexibility and also intuitiveness.

Besides the Concentration–Compactness Principle already described, a new technique to deal with problems without compactness has been introduced in the last years by Ambrosetti and Badiale ([3, 4, 6]), which improves some previous results contained in [7]. It allows us to treat problems in which a "small parameter" appears, and permits to find existence and multiplicity results even in some situations where the concentration-compactness methods fails or requires heavy calculations. For the sake of completeness, we present below this technique in some detail. Roughly speaking, we can say that one exploits some very precise properties of solutions to unperturbed equations to find one or more solutions of a perturbed equation.

Suppose we are given a family  $\{f_{\varepsilon}\}$  of  $C^2$  functionals over a real Hilbert space, parametrized by  $\varepsilon \geq 0$ . When  $\varepsilon = 0$ , we have a "distinguished" functional  $f_0$ , and we suppose that  $f_0$  has a whole manifold of critical points. Under suitable assumptions, it is possible to prove the existence of critical points of each  $f_{\varepsilon}$ , provided  $\varepsilon$  is small enough. Let us formalize what we have said.

We want to find critical points of functionals of the form

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = \frac{1}{2}||u||^2 - F(u) + G(\varepsilon, u), \qquad (2.1)$$

where  $\|\cdot\|$  denotes the norm in an Hilbert space  $E, F: E \to \mathbb{R}$  and  $G: \mathbb{R} \times E \to \mathbb{R}$ . We assume that  $f_0 = \frac{1}{2} \|\cdot\|^2 - F$  has a nondegenerate critical manifold<sup>2</sup> Z, namely we require that

- (F0)  $F \in C^2$  and G(0, u) = 0 for all  $u \in E$ ;
- (F1) there exists a d-dimensional  $C^2$  manifold Z at level b of critical points of  $f_0$ ;

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Very recently, this assuption has been highly relaxed, to cover situations where the points of this manifold are far from being critical. We refer to [9].

We always assume manifold to be smooth enough. As a rule,  $C^2$  is enough.

(F2) F''(z) is compact, for all  $z \in Z$ ;

(F3) 
$$T_z Z = \ker f_0''(z)$$
, for all  $z \in Z$ .

Here  $T_zZ$  stands for the tangent space to Z at the point  $z \in Z$ . Indicating with G' and G'' respectively the first and the second derivative of G with respect to u, on G we assume

- (G0) G is continuous in  $\mathbb{R} \times E$  and G(0, u) = 0, for all  $u \in E$ ;
- (G1) G is of class  $C^2$  with respect to  $u \in E$ ;
- (G2) the maps  $(\varepsilon, u) \longmapsto G'(\varepsilon, u)$  and  $(\varepsilon, u) \longmapsto G''(\varepsilon, u)$  are continuous;
- (G3) there exist  $\alpha > 0$  and a continuous function  $\Gamma: Z \to \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\Gamma(z) = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{G(\varepsilon, z)}{\varepsilon^{\alpha}}$$

and

$$G'(\varepsilon, z) = o(\varepsilon^{\alpha/2}).$$

To avoid technicalities, we will assume that  $Z = \zeta(\mathbb{R}^d)$  where  $\zeta \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^d, E)$ . We will set  $Z^r = \zeta(B_r)$  where  $B_r = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : |x| \leq r\}$ .

The main idea is to use the implicit function theorem to produce a good local deformation of Z in the normal direction. More precisely we have the following.

**Lemma 2.1.** Given R > 0, there exist  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$  and a smooth function

$$w \colon M = Z^R \times (-\varepsilon_0, \varepsilon_0) \to E$$

such that

(i) w(z,0) = 0 for all  $z \in \mathbb{Z}^R$ ;

(ii)  $f'_{\varepsilon}(z+w(z,\varepsilon)) \in T_z Z$  for all  $(z,\varepsilon) \in M$ ;

(iii)  $w(z,\varepsilon)$  is orthogonal to  $T_zZ$  for all  $(z,\varepsilon) \in M$ .

Proof. See [3].

Lemma 2.2. The manifold

$$Z_{\varepsilon} = \{ z + w(z, \varepsilon) \mid (z, \varepsilon) \in M \}$$

is a natural constraint for  $f_{\varepsilon}$ , namely: if  $u \in Z_{\varepsilon}$  and  $f_{\varepsilon}|_{Z_{\varepsilon}}(u) = 0$ , then  $f'_{\varepsilon}(u) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $f_{\varepsilon}|_{Z_{\varepsilon}}(u) = 0$ . Then  $f'_{\varepsilon}(u)$  is orthogonal to  $T_u Z_{\varepsilon}$ . On the other hand,  $f_{\varepsilon}(u) \in T_z Z$  and  $T_u Z_{\varepsilon}$  is close to  $T_z Z$  for  $\varepsilon$  small. This implies  $f'_{\varepsilon}(u) = 0$ .

We have the following theorem (see Theorem 1.3 of [4]):

**Theorem 2.1.** Suppose (F0-3) and (G0-3) hold and assume that there exist  $\delta > 0$  and  $z^* \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$either \quad \min_{\|z-z^*\|=\delta} \Gamma(z) > \Gamma(z^*) \quad or \quad \max_{\|z-z^*\|=\delta} \Gamma(z) < \Gamma(z^*).$$

Then, for  $\varepsilon$  small,  $f_{\varepsilon}$  has a critical point in Z.

*Proof.* We give only the sketch of the proof divided into three steps.

Step 1 It is not difficult to prove that the function w built in the previous Lemma is such that

$$||w|| = o(\varepsilon^{\alpha/2})$$
 and  $f'_{\varepsilon}(z+w) \in T_z Z.$  (2.2)

**Step 2** Using the Taylor expansion, for  $u \in Z_{\varepsilon}$ , one can easily see that

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = b + \varepsilon^{\alpha} \Gamma(z) + o(\varepsilon^{\alpha}) \qquad (\varepsilon \to 0).$$

Step 3 It readily follows that  $f_{\varepsilon}$  has a local constrained minimum (or maximum) on  $Z_{\varepsilon}$  at some  $u_{\varepsilon}$ . According to Lemma 2.2, such a  $u_{\varepsilon}$  is a critical point of  $f_{\varepsilon}$ .

Under some additional assumptions, we can have more information about the bifurcation set: we can say that this set is a curve.

Hereafter, we will denote  $z_{\theta}$ ,  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}^d$ , the elements of Z. We will indicate with  $\partial_i z$  and  $\partial_{ij} z$  respectively  $\partial z/\partial \theta_i$  and  $\partial^2 z/\partial \theta_i \partial \theta_j$ .

Now we consider two case:

First case Suppose that

(F4) F is of class  $C^4$ ;

(G4) G is of class  $C^4$  with respect to  $u \in E$ , moreover the maps  $(\varepsilon, u) \longmapsto G'''(\varepsilon, u)$  is continuous;

(G5)  $G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta}) = o(\varepsilon^{\alpha/2})$  and there exist continuous functions  $\gamma_{ij}, \tilde{\gamma}_{ij} : Z \to \mathbb{R}$  such that if  $\theta_{\varepsilon} \to \theta$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , there results

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) \middle| \partial_{ij} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \right) \to \gamma_{ij}(\theta),$$
 (2.3)

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) \partial_i z_{\theta} | \partial_i z_{\theta} \right) \to \tilde{\gamma}_{ij}(\theta),$$
 (2.4)

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha/2}G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \to 0,$$
 (2.5)

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha/2}G'''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_i z_{\theta}, \partial_i z_{\theta}] \to 0,$$
 (2.6)

as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

Second case Suppose that

(F4)' F is of class  $C^3$ ;

(G4)' G is of class  $C^3$  with respect to  $u \in E$  and  $G'''(\varepsilon, u) \to 0$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , uniformly in  $u \in Z^r$ ; moreover the map  $(\varepsilon, u) \longmapsto G'''(\varepsilon, u)$  is continuous; (G5)'  $G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta}) = O(\varepsilon^{\alpha})$  and there exist continuous functions  $\gamma_{ij}, \tilde{\gamma}_{ij} : Z \to \mathbb{R}$  such that if  $\theta_{\varepsilon} \to \theta$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , there results

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) | \partial_{ij} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \right) \to \gamma_{ij}(\theta),$$

$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) \partial_{i} z_{\theta} | \partial_{j} z_{\theta} \right) \to \tilde{\gamma}_{ij}(\theta),$$

as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

The next theorem shows that the Morse index of the critical points  $u_{\varepsilon}$  is related to the nature of  $u_{\varepsilon}$  as a critical point of the Melnikov function  $\Gamma$ . Sometimes, this allows us to conclude that a particular critical point could not be found directly by an application of constrained minimization or of the mountain pass theorem. The Morse index of critical points of mountain pass type has been calculated. We refer to [27].

Despite its length, we present the proof, since in the original paper [4] there is a mistake. We wish to express our gratitude to A. Pomponio for pointing out this fact to us and supplying us with the correct statement and proof. See also [13].

**Theorem 2.2.** Let  $F \in C^3$ , (F0-3) and (G0-3) hold. Suppose either (F4) and (G4-5) or (F4)' and (G4-5)' are satisfied. Let  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}^d$  be given and let  $u_{\varepsilon} = z(\theta_{\varepsilon}) + w(\varepsilon, \theta_{\varepsilon}) \in Z_{\varepsilon}$  be a critical point of  $f_{\varepsilon}$  on  $Z_{\varepsilon}$  with  $\theta_{\varepsilon} \to \theta$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ . Assume that  $z_{\theta} = \lim_{\varepsilon} z(\theta_{\varepsilon})$  is nondegenerate for the restriction of  $f_0$  to  $(T_{z_{\theta}}Z)^{\perp}$ , with Morse index equal to  $m_0$ , and that the Hessian  $D^2\Gamma(\theta)$  is positive (negative) definite.

Then  $u_{\varepsilon}$  in a nondegenerate critical point for  $f_{\varepsilon}$  with Morse index equal to  $m_0$ , if  $D^2\Gamma(\theta)>0$ , and to  $m_0+d$ , if  $D^2\Gamma(\theta)<0$ . As a consequence, the critical points of  $f_{\varepsilon}$  form a continuous curve.

*Proof.* The first part of the proof works for all the two cases. We write  $E = E^+ \oplus E^0 \oplus E^-$  where  $E^0 = T_z Z$ ,  $\dim(E^-) = m_0$  and

$$\begin{cases} D^2 f_0(z)[v,v] > 0 & \forall v \in E^+ \\ D^2 f_0(z)[v,v] < 0 & \forall v \in E^-. \end{cases}$$
 (2.7)

Moreover we have

$$D^2 f_0(z)[\partial_i z, \partial_j z] = 0.$$

We denote with  $\varphi_i^0 = \partial_i z$ , for i = 1, ..., d, and with  $t_i^0$ , for  $i = 1, ..., m_0$ , respectively the orthonormal base of  $E^0$  and  $E^-$ .

We call now  $E_{\varepsilon}^0 = T_{u_{\varepsilon}} Z$  and we will denote with  $\varphi_i^{\varepsilon}$ , for  $i = 1, \ldots, d$ , its orthonormal base.

For  $i=1,\ldots,m_0$ , we want to find  $\alpha_j^{\varepsilon}$  such that if  $t_i^{\varepsilon}=t_i^0+\alpha_i^{\varepsilon}$  then  $(t_i^{\varepsilon}|\varphi_i^{\varepsilon})=0$ , for all  $j=1,\ldots,d$ . So we must have

$$0 = (t_i^{\varepsilon}|\varphi_i^{\varepsilon}) = (t_i^0 + \alpha_i^{\varepsilon}|\varphi_j^0 + (\varphi_i^{\varepsilon} - \varphi_j^0)) = (t_i^0|\varphi_j^{\varepsilon} - \varphi_j^0) + (\alpha_i^{\varepsilon}|\varphi_j^{\varepsilon}),$$

therefore

$$(\alpha_i^{\varepsilon}|\varphi_i^{\varepsilon}) = -(t_i^0|\varphi_i^{\varepsilon} - \varphi_i^0)$$

and we take  $\alpha_i^{\varepsilon} = \sum_{j=1}^d -(t_i^0 | \varphi_j^{\varepsilon} - \varphi_j^0) \varphi_j^{\varepsilon}$ .

Let  $E_{\varepsilon}^-$  be the space spanned by  $\left\{\frac{t_1^{\varepsilon}}{|t_1^{\varepsilon}|}, \dots, \frac{t_{m_0}^{\varepsilon}}{|t_{m_0}^{\varepsilon}|}\right\}$ . We have

$$D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[t_{i}^{\varepsilon}, t_{j}^{\varepsilon}] = D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[t_{i}^{0} + \alpha_{i}^{\varepsilon}, t_{j}^{0} + \alpha_{j}^{\varepsilon}] =$$

$$= D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[t_{i}^{0}, t_{j}^{0}] + D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[t_{i}^{0}, \alpha_{j}^{\varepsilon}] + D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[\alpha_{i}^{\varepsilon}, t_{j}^{0}] + D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[\alpha_{i}^{\varepsilon}, \alpha_{j}^{\varepsilon}].$$

Since  $\alpha_i^{\varepsilon}$  goes to 0, as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , by (2.7) we have

$$D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[t_i^{\varepsilon}, t_i^{\varepsilon}] < 0 \tag{2.8}$$

and therefore  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})$  is negative definite on  $E_{\varepsilon}^-$ , for  $\varepsilon$  small. Let us put now  $E_{\varepsilon}^+ = (E_{\varepsilon}^0 \oplus E_{\varepsilon}^-)^{\perp}$ . Of course we have

$$E = E_{\varepsilon}^{+} \oplus E_{\varepsilon}^{0} \oplus E_{\varepsilon}^{-}.$$

We want to show that  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})$  is positive definite on  $E_{\varepsilon}^+$ . Let  $v_{\varepsilon} \in E_{\varepsilon}^+$  with  $|v_{\varepsilon}| = 1$ . Let  $P^+$  indicate the orthogonal projection on  $E^+$ , then

$$D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[v_{\varepsilon}, v_{\varepsilon}] = D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[P^{+}v_{\varepsilon} + (v_{\varepsilon} - P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}), P^{+}v_{\varepsilon} + (v_{\varepsilon} - P^{+}v_{\varepsilon})] =$$

$$= D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}, P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}] + 2D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}, v_{\varepsilon} - P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}] +$$

$$+ D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[v_{\varepsilon} - P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}, v_{\varepsilon} - P^{+}v_{\varepsilon}].$$

We claim that there exist  $\delta > 0$  and  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$  such that for all  $\varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$  and for all  $v_{\varepsilon} \in E_{\varepsilon}^+$  we have

$$D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[v_{\varepsilon}, v_{\varepsilon}] > \delta. \tag{2.9}$$

By contradiction, suppose the contrary, i.e. for all  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  there exist  $\varepsilon_k$  and  $v_{\varepsilon_k} \in E_{\varepsilon_k}^+$  such that

$$D^2 f_{\varepsilon_k}(u_{\varepsilon_k})[v_{\varepsilon_k}, v_{\varepsilon_k}] < \frac{1}{k}.$$

So we should have

$$\frac{1}{k} > D^2 f_{\varepsilon_k}(u_{\varepsilon_k}) [P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}, P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}] + 2D^2 f_{\varepsilon_k}(u_{\varepsilon_k}) [P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}, v_{\varepsilon_k} - P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}] + D^2 f_{\varepsilon_k}(u_{\varepsilon_k}) [v_{\varepsilon_k} - P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}, v_{\varepsilon_k} - P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k}]$$

Recall that

$$v_{\varepsilon_k} - P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k} = \sum_{i=1}^{m_0} (v_{\varepsilon_k} | t_i^0) t_i^0 + \sum_{i=1}^d (v_{\varepsilon_k} | \varphi_i^0) \varphi_i^0.$$

and notice that, since  $v_{\varepsilon_k} \in E_{\varepsilon_k}^+$ ,  $(v_{\varepsilon_k}|t_i^{\varepsilon}) = 0$  and  $(v_{\varepsilon_k}|\varphi_i^{\varepsilon}) = 0$ . We have

$$(v_{\varepsilon_k}|t_i^0) = (v_{\varepsilon_k}|t_i^{\varepsilon}) + (v_{\varepsilon_k}|t_i^0 - t_i^{\varepsilon}),$$

the first term is zero, the second one goes to zero since  $\{v_{\varepsilon_k}\}$  is a bounded sequence. Similarly we have that also  $(v_{\varepsilon_k}|\varphi_i^0)$  goes to zero and so

$$v_{\varepsilon_k} - P^+ v_{\varepsilon_k} \to 0.$$

This is a contradiction since, for k sufficiently large, by (2.7) we have

$$D^2 f_{\varepsilon_h}(u_{\varepsilon_h})[v_{\varepsilon_h}, v_{\varepsilon_h}] \geq \bar{\delta} > 0.$$

At this moment, by (2.8) and (2.9), we have shown that  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})$  is negative definite on  $E_{\varepsilon}^-$  and positive definite on  $E_{\varepsilon}^+$ . We now want to investigate the behavior of  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})$  on  $E_{\varepsilon}^0$ .

First case We have

$$D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon}) [\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] =$$

$$= (\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} | \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) - F''(u_{\varepsilon}) [\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] + G''(\varepsilon, u_{\varepsilon}) [\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]$$
(2.10)

We know by (F3) that  $\partial_i z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \in \ker[I_E - F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})]$  and so recalling that w(0,z) = 0 and expanding  $F''(u_{\varepsilon})$  and  $G''(\varepsilon,u_{\varepsilon})$ , (2.10) becomes

$$\begin{split} D^{2}f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] &= \\ &= (\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}|\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) - F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] - (F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) + \\ &+ G''(\varepsilon,z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] + (G'''(\varepsilon,z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) + O(||w_{\varepsilon}||^{2}) = \\ &= -(F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) + G''(\varepsilon,z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] + \\ &+ (G'''(\varepsilon,z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) + O(||w_{\varepsilon}||^{2}) \end{split}$$

We observe explicitly that, since  $w_{\varepsilon} = o(\varepsilon^{\alpha/2})$  and by (2.6) of (G5) we can write

$$D^{2} f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})[\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] =$$

$$= -(F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) + G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] + o(\varepsilon^{\alpha}) \quad (2.11)$$

By (2.2) we have

$$z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon} - F'(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon}) + G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon}) = \sum_{l} a_{l} \partial_{l} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},$$

and so a development of  $F'(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon})$  and  $G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon})$  yields

$$z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + w_{\varepsilon} - F'(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) - F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) w_{\varepsilon} + G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) w_{\varepsilon} = \sum_{l} a_{l} \partial_{l} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}.$$
 (2.12)

Without loss of generality, we can assume that the parametrization of Z is normal to  $\theta$ , namely that  $\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \perp T_{z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}}Z$ . Taking the scalar product of (2.12) with  $\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}$  and, since  $z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} = F'(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})$ , we find

$$(w_{\varepsilon}|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) - (F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})w_{\varepsilon}|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + (G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + (G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})w_{\varepsilon}|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) = 0 \quad (2.13)$$

By (2.5) of (G5), (2.13) becomes

$$(w_{\varepsilon}|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) - (F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})w_{\varepsilon}|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + (G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + o(\varepsilon^{\alpha}) = 0$$
 (2.14)

From  $z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} = F'(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})$ , it follows

$$\partial_{ij} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} = F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) \partial_{ij} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} + F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) [\partial_{i} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]. \tag{2.15}$$

The scalar product of (2.15) with  $w_{\varepsilon}$  is

$$(\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}|w_{\varepsilon}) = (F''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}|w_{\varepsilon}) + (F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}},\partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}). \tag{2.16}$$

Substituting (2.16) in (2.14), we have

$$-(F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_i z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_j z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon}) = (G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})|\partial_{ij} z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}) + o(\varepsilon^{\alpha}). \tag{2.17}$$

Dividing by  $\varepsilon^{\alpha}$  and passing to the limit for  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , by (2.3) and (2.4) of (G5) we have:

$$-\varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( F'''(z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}]|w_{\varepsilon} \right) = \varepsilon^{-\alpha} \left( G'(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})|\partial_{ij}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}} \right) + o(1) \to \gamma_{ij}(\theta),$$
$$\varepsilon^{-\alpha} G''(\varepsilon, z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}})[\partial_{i}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_{j}z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] \to \tilde{\gamma}_{ij}(\theta).$$

Therefore, by (2.11)

$$\lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon^{\alpha}} D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon}) [\partial_i z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}, \partial_j z_{\theta_{\varepsilon}}] = \gamma_{ij}(\theta) + \tilde{\gamma}_{ij}(\theta).$$

On the other side we have

$$\partial_{ij}\Gamma(\theta) = \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon^{\alpha}} \left( G'(\varepsilon, z) | \partial_{ij} z \right) + \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon^{\alpha}} G''(\varepsilon, z) [\partial_{i} z, \partial_{j} z] = \gamma_{ij}(\theta) + \tilde{\gamma}_{ij}(\theta).$$

**Second case** To study the behavior of  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(u_{\varepsilon})$  on  $E_{\varepsilon}^0$ , we note that, by (G5)' and recalling that  $w_{\varepsilon} = O(\varepsilon^{\alpha})$  (see Lemma 2.2 of [4]), one can show easily that (2.11) and (2.17) still hold and so the proof goes as in our case.

In [3], the case of a perturbation like

$$f_{\varepsilon} = f_0 + \varepsilon G$$

was considered, leading to to easier statements and proofs. For some applications, we refer to the bibliography.

### 36 2 The perturbation technique

We present in the next chapters a few applications of the perturbation technique. The reader will see that the strategy is rather clear, despite some modifications due to the specific shape of the perturbation terms. In the case of the  $Schr\"{o}dinger\ equation$ , the perturbation term is not globally smooth in the variables  $(\varepsilon,u)\in\mathbb{R}\times H^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , so that some trick is needed in order to apply the finite-dimensional reduction.

# 3 Closed geodesics on cylinders

In this chapter, we concentrate on the existence of closed geodesics on a non-compact manifold M. First, we gather some results from Riemannian geometry.

## 3.1 Tools from differential geometry

We assume some knowledge of what a smooth differentiable manifold is, together with the main structures: tangent and cotangent spaces, inner products, and so on.

Definition 3.1. Let M be a smooth differentiable manifold. A Riemannian metric on M is a tensor field  $g: C_2^{\infty}(TM) \to C_2^{\infty}(TM)$  such that for each  $p \in M$  the restriction  $g_p = g_{|T_pM \otimes T_pM} : T_pM \otimes T_pM \to \mathbb{R}$  with

$$g_p \colon (X_p, Y_p) \mapsto g(X, Y)(p)$$

is an inner product on the vector space  $T_pM$  The pair (M,g) is acalled a Riemannian manifold.

**Definition 3.2.** Let  $(E, M, \pi)$  be a smooth vector bundle over M. A connection on  $(E, M, \pi)$  is a map  $\nabla : C^{\infty}(TM) \times C^{\infty}(E) \to C^{\infty}(E)$  such that

- 1.  $\nabla_X(\lambda \cdot v + \mu \cdot w) = \lambda \cdot \nabla_X v + \mu \cdot \nabla_X w;$
- 2.  $\nabla_X(f \cdot v) = X(f) \cdot v + f \cdot \nabla_X v;$ 3.  $\nabla_{(f \cdot X + g \cdot Y)} v = f \cdot \nabla_X v + g \cdot \nabla_Y v$

for all  $\lambda$ ,  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ , X,  $Y \in C^{\infty}(TM)$ , v,  $w \in C^{\infty}(E)$ , and f,  $g \in C^{\infty}(M)$ . A section  $v \in C^{\infty}(E)$  is called parallel with respect to the connection if  $\nabla_X v = 0 \text{ for all } X \in C^{\infty}(TM).$ 

**Definition 3.3.** Let M be a smooth manifold, and  $\nabla$  be a connection on the tangent bundle  $(TM, M, \pi)$ . The torsion of  $\nabla$  is the map  $T: C_2^{\infty}(TM) \to$  $C_1^{\infty}(TM)$  defined by

$$T(X,Y) = \nabla_X Y - \nabla_Y X - [X,Y],$$

where [,] is the Lie bracket on  $C^{\infty}(M)$ . A connection  $\nabla$  is torsion-free if  $T \equiv 0$ .

If g is a Riemannian metric on M, then  $\nabla$  is said to be metric if

$$X(g(Y,Z)) = g(\nabla_X Y, Z) + g(Y, \nabla_X Z)$$

for all X, Y,  $Z \in C^{\infty}(TM)$ .

**Theorem 3.1.** Let (M,g) be a Riemannian manifold. There exists one and only one connection  $\nabla$  on M such that

$$g(\nabla_X Y, Z) = \frac{1}{2} \left( X(g(Y, Z)) + Y(g(Z, X)) - Z(g(X, Y)) + g(Z, [X, Y]) + g(Y, [Z, X]) - g(X, [Y, Z]) \right)$$

for all X, Y,  $Z \in C^{\infty}(TM)$ . This connection is called the Levi-Civita connection on M.

**Definition 3.4.** Let M be a smooth manifold and  $(TM, M, \pi)$  be its tangent bundle. A vector field X along a curve  $\gamma \colon I \to M$  is a curve  $X \colon I \to TM$  such that  $\pi \circ X = \gamma$ . By  $C^{\infty}_{\gamma}(TM)$  we denote the set of all smooth vector fields along  $\gamma$ .

**Definition 3.5.** Let (M,g) be a Riemannian manifold and  $\gamma\colon I\to M$  be a  $C^1$ -curve. A vector field X along  $\gamma$  is said to be parallel along  $\gamma$  if

$$\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}}X = 0.$$

A  $C^2$ -curve  $\gamma\colon I\to M$  is said to be a geodesic if the vector field  $\dot{\gamma}$  is parallel along  $\gamma$ , i.e.

 $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}}\dot{\gamma}=0.$ 

Geodesics possess a variational characterization that we now clarify.

**Definition 3.6.** Let (M,g) be a Riemannian manifold and  $\gamma\colon I\to M$  be a  $C^2$ -curve on M. For every compact interval  $[a,b]\subset I$  we define the energy functional

 $E_{[a,b]}(\gamma) = \frac{1}{2} \int_a^b g(\dot{\gamma}(t), \dot{\gamma}(t)) dt.$ 

**Theorem 3.2.** A  $C^2$ -curve  $\gamma$  is a critical point for the energy functional if and only if it is a geodesic.

**Definition 3.7.** A geodesic is closed if its image is diffeomorphic to  $S^1$ .

When M is compact, closed geodesics can be found by standard variational arguments. For a survey of standard and advanced results on the existence of closed geodesics, we refer to [58].

On the other hand, when M is not compact, the existence of critical points of the energy E is no longer evident. Indeed, very few results are known in the literature, see [16, 59, 85]. In particular, Tanaka deals with the manifod  $M = \mathbb{R} \times S^N$ , endowed with a metric  $g(s,\xi) = g_0(\xi) + h(s,\xi)$ , where  $g_0$  is the standard product metric on  $\mathbb{R} \times S^N$ . Under the assumption that  $h(s,\xi) \to 0$  as  $|s| \to \infty$ , he proves the existence of a closed geodesic, found as a critical point of the energy functional

$$E(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 g(u)[\dot{u}, \dot{u}] dt, \tag{3.1}$$

defined on the loop space  $\Lambda = \Lambda(M) = H^1(S^1, M)$ . The lack of compactness due to the unboundedness of M is overcome by a suitable use of the concentration–compactness principle. To carry out the proof, the fact that M has the specific form  $M = \mathbb{R} \times S^N$  is fundamental, because this permits to compare E with a functional at infinity whose behavior is explicitly known.

Here we consider a perturbed metric  $g_{\varepsilon} = g_0 + \varepsilon h$ , and extend Tanaka's result in two directions. First, we show the existence of at least N, in some cases 2N, closed geodesics on  $M = \mathbb{R} \times S^N$ , see Theorem 3.5. Such a theorem can also be seen as an extension to cilyndrical domains of the result by Carminati [25]. Next, we deal with the case in which  $M = \mathbb{R} \times M_0$  for a general compact N-dimensional manifold  $M_0$ . The existence result we are able to prove requires that either  $M_0$  possesses a non-degenerate closed geodesic, see Theorem 3.6, or that  $\pi_1(M_0) \neq \{0\}$  and the geodesics on  $M_0$  are isolated, see Theorem 3.8.

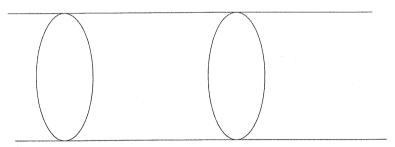


Fig. 3.1. Unperturbed cylinder

The approach we use is different that Tanaka's one, and relies on the perturbation result discussed before. Roughly, the main advantages of using this abstract perturbation method are that

(i) we can obtain sharper results, like the multeplicity ones;

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> We will identify  $S^1$  with  $[0,1]/\{0,1\}$ .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> By manifold we mean a smooth, connected manifold.

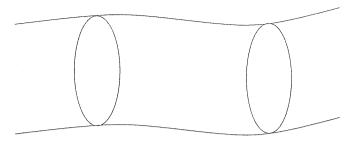


Fig. 3.2. Perturbed cylinder

(ii) we can deal with a general manifold like  $M = \mathbb{R} \times M_0$ , not only  $M = \mathbb{R} \times S^N$ , when the results – for the reasons indicated before – cannot be easily obtained by using Tanaka's approach.

## 3.2 Spheres

In this section we assume  $M=\mathbb{R}\times S^N,$  where  $S^N=\{\xi\in\mathbb{R}^{N+1}:|\xi|=1\}$  3. For  $s\in\mathbb{R},\ r\in T_s\mathbb{R}\approx\mathbb{R},\ \xi\in S^N,\ \eta\in T_\xi S^N,$  let

$$g_0(s,\xi)((r,\eta),(r,\eta)) = |r|^2 + |\eta|^2$$
 (3.2)

be the standard product metric on  $M=\mathbb{R}\times S^N.$  We consider a perturbed metric

$$g_{\varepsilon}(s,\xi)((r,\eta),(r,\eta)) = |r|^2 + |\eta|^2 + \varepsilon h(s,\xi)((r,\eta),(r,\eta)),$$
 (3.3)

where  $h(s,\xi)$  is a bilinear form, not necessarily positive definite. Define the space of closed loops

$$\Lambda = \{ u = (r, x) \in H^1(S^1, \mathbb{R}) \times H^1(S^1, S^N) \}$$
(3.4)

Closed geodesics on  $(M, g_{\varepsilon})$  are the critical points of  $E_{\varepsilon} \colon \Lambda \to \mathbb{R}$  given by

$$E_{\varepsilon}(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{1} g_{\varepsilon}(u) [\dot{u}, \dot{u}] dt.$$
 (3.5)

One has that

$$E_{\varepsilon}(u) = E_{\varepsilon}(r, x) = E_0(r, x) + \varepsilon G(r, x), \tag{3.6}$$

where

$$E_0(r,x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (|\dot{r}|^2 + |\dot{x}|^2) dt$$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Hereafter, we use the notation  $\xi \bullet \eta = \sum_i \xi_i \eta_i$  for the scalar product in  $\mathbb{R}^{N+1}$ , and  $|\xi|^2 = \xi \bullet \xi$ .

and

$$G(r,x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 h(r,x)[(\dot{r},\dot{x}),(\dot{r},\dot{x})] dt.$$
 (3.7)

In particular, we split  $E_0$  into two parts, namely

$$E_0(r,x) = L_0(r) + E_{M_0}(x),$$
 (3.8)

where

$$L_0(r) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 |\dot{r}|^2 dt, \quad E_{M_0}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 |\dot{x}|^2 dt.$$

The form of  $E_{\varepsilon}$  suggests to apply the perturbative results of [3] in the following form.

**Theorem 3.3.** Let H be a real Hilbert space,  $E_{\varepsilon} \in C^{2}(H)$  be of the form

$$E_{\varepsilon}(u) = E_0(u) + \varepsilon G(u),$$
 (3.9)

where  $G \in C^2(E)$ .. Suppose that there exists a finite dimensional manifold Z such that

(AS1)  $E'_0(z) = 0$  for all  $z \in Z$ ;

(AS2)  $E_0''(z)$  is a compact perturbation of the identity, for all  $z \in Z$ ;

(AS3)  $T_zZ = \ker E_0''(z)$  for all  $z \in Z$ .

There exist a positive number  $\varepsilon_0$  and a smooth function  $w: Z \times (-\varepsilon_0, \varepsilon_0) \to H$  such that the critical points of

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(z) = E_{\varepsilon}(z + w(z, \varepsilon)), \quad z \in \mathbb{Z},$$
(3.10)

are critical points of  $E_{\varepsilon}$ .

Moreover, it is possible to show that

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(z) = b + \varepsilon \Gamma(z) + o(\varepsilon),$$
 (3.11)

where  $b = E_0(z)$  and  $\Gamma = G_{|Z}$ . From this "first order" expansion, one infers

**Theorem 3.4** ([3]). Let H be a real Hilbert space,  $E_{\varepsilon} \in C^2(H)$  be of the form (3.9). Suppose that (AS1)-(AS3) hold. Then any strict local extremum of  $G_{|Z|}$  gives rise to a critical point of  $E_{\varepsilon}$ , for  $|\varepsilon|$  sufficiently small.

In the present situation, the critical points of  $E_0$  are nothing but the great circles of  $S^N$ , namely

$$z_{p,q} = p\cos 2\pi t + q\sin 2\pi t, (3.12)$$

where  $p, q \in \mathbb{R}^{N+1}$ ,  $p \bullet q = 0$ , |p| = |q| = 1. Hence  $E_0$  has a "critical manifold" given by

$$Z = \{ z(r, p, q) = (r, z_{p,q}(\cdot)) \mid r \in \mathbb{R}, z_{p,q} \text{ as in } (3.12) \}.$$

Lemma 3.1. Z satisfies (AS2)-(AS3).

*Proof.* The first assertion is known, see for instance [56].

For the second statement, we closely follow [25].

For  $z \in Z$ , of the form  $z(t) = (r, z_{p,q}(t))$ , it turns out that

$$E_0''(z)[h,k] = \int_0^1 \left[ h \bullet k - |z|^2 h \bullet k \right] dt$$

for any  $h,k\in T_zZ$ . Let  $e_i\in\mathbb{R}^{N+1},\ i=2,\ldots,N+1,$  be orthonormal vectors such that  $\{\frac{1}{2\pi}\dot{z}_{p,q},e_2,\ldots e_{N+1}\}$  is a basis of  $T_zZ$ , and set

$$e_i(t) = \begin{cases} \dot{z}_{u^1, u^2}(t)/2\pi & \text{if } i = 1\\ e_i & \text{if } i > 1, \end{cases}$$

Then, for h, k as before, we can write a "Fourier-type" expansion

$$h(t) = h_0(t)\frac{d}{dt} + \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} h_i(t)e_i(t), \quad k(t) = k_0(t)\frac{d}{dt} + \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} k_i(t)e_i(t). \quad (3.13)$$

Assume now that  $h \in \ker E_0''(z_{p,q})$ , i.e.

$$\int_0^1 \dot{h} \bullet \dot{k} \, dt = \int_0^1 |\dot{z}|^2 h \bullet k \, dt \quad \forall k \in T_{z_{p,q}} Z.$$

We plug (3.13) into this relations, and we get the system

$$\begin{cases} \dot{h_1} = 0 \\ \dot{h_j} + 4\pi^2 h_j = 0 \quad j = 2, \dots, N - 1 \\ \dot{h_0} = 0. \end{cases}$$
 (3.14)

Recalling that  $h_0$  and  $h_1$  are periodic, we find

$$\begin{cases} h_0 = \lambda_0, & h_1 = \lambda_1 \\ h_j = \lambda_j \cos 2\pi t + \mu_j \sin 2\pi t & j = 2, \dots N - 1. \end{cases}$$
 (3.15)

Therefore,  $h \in T_z Z$ . This shows that  $\ker E_0''(z_{p,q}) \subset T_{z_{p,q}} Z$ . Since the converse inclusion is is always true, the lemma follows.

Lemma 3.2. Suppose

(h1)  $h(r,\cdot) \to 0$  pointwise on  $S^N$ , as  $|r| \to \infty$ ,

then

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon} \to b \equiv E_0(z).$$

Recall that  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  was defined in (3.10).

*Proof.* This is proved as in [8, 19]. We just sketch the argument. The idea is to use the contraction mapping principle to characterize the function  $w(\varepsilon, z)$  (see Theorem 1). Indeed, define

$$H(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) = \begin{pmatrix} E'_{\varepsilon}(z_r + w) - \alpha \dot{z} \\ w \bullet \dot{z} \end{pmatrix}$$

So H=0 if and only if  $w \in (T_{z_r}Z)^{\perp}$  and  $E'_{\varepsilon}(z_r+w) \in T_{z_r}Z$ . Now,

$$H(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) = 0 \Leftrightarrow H(0, 0, z_r, 0) + \frac{\partial H}{\partial (\alpha, w)}(0, 0, z_r, 0)[\alpha, w] + R(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) = 0,$$

where  $R(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) = H(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) - \frac{\partial H}{\partial(\alpha, w)}(0, 0, z_r, 0)[\alpha, w]$ . Setting

$$R_{z_r,\varepsilon}(\alpha,w) = -\left[\frac{\partial H}{\partial(\alpha,w)}(0,0,z_r,0)\right]^{-1} R(\alpha,w,z_r,\varepsilon),$$

one finds that

$$H(\alpha, w, z_r, \varepsilon) = 0 \Leftrightarrow (\alpha, w) = R_{z_r, \varepsilon}(\alpha, w).$$

By the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality, it turns out that  $R_{zr,\varepsilon}$  is a contraction mapping from some ball  $B_{\rho(\varepsilon)}$  into itself. If  $|\varepsilon|$  is sufficiently small, we have proved the existence of  $(\alpha, w)$  uniformly for  $z_r \in Z$ . We want to study the asymptotic behavior of  $w = w(\varepsilon, z_r)$  as  $|r| \to +\infty$ . We denote by  $R_\varepsilon^0$  the functions  $R_{z_r,\varepsilon}$  corresponding to the unperturbed energy functional  $E_0 = E_{M_0}$ . It is easy to see ([19], Lemma 3) that the function  $w^0$  found with the same argument as before satisfies  $||w^0(z_r)|| \to 0$  as  $|r| \to +\infty$ . Thus, by the continuous dependence of  $w(\varepsilon, z_r)$  on  $\varepsilon$  and the characterization of  $w(\varepsilon, z_r)$  and  $w^0$  as fixed points of contractive mappings, we deduce as in [8], proof of Lemma 3.2, that  $\lim_{r\to\infty} w(\varepsilon, z_r) = 0$ . In conclusion, we have that  $\lim_{|r|\to+\infty} \Phi_\varepsilon(z_r + w(\varepsilon, z_r)) = E_{M_0}(z_0)$ .

Remark 3.1. There is a natural action of the group O(2) on the space  $\Lambda$ , given by

$$\{\pm 1\} \times S^1 \times \Lambda \longrightarrow \Lambda$$
  
 $(\pm 1, \theta, u) \mapsto u(\pm t + \theta),$ 

under which the energy  $E_{\varepsilon}$  is invariant. Since this is an isometric action under which Z is left unchanged, it easily follows that the function w constructed in Theorem 3.3 is invariant, too.

**Theorem 3.5.** Assume that the functions  $h_{ij} = h_{ji}$ 's are smooth, bounded, and (h1) holds Then  $M = \mathbb{R} \times M_0$  has at least N non-trivial closed geodesics, distinct modulo the action of the group O(2). Furthermore, if

(h2) the matrix  $[h_{ij}(p,\cdot)]$  representing the bilinear form h is positive definite for  $p \to +\infty$ , and negative definite for  $p \to -\infty$ ,

then M possesses at least 2N non-trivial closed geodesics, geometrically distinct.

Proof. Observe that  $Z = \mathbb{R} \times Z_0$ , where  $Z_0 = \{z_{p,q} \mid |p| = |q| = 1, \ p \bullet q = 0\}$ . According to Theorem 2.1, it suffices to look for critical points of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$ . From Lemma 3.2, it follows that either  $\Phi_{\varepsilon} = b$  everywhere, or it has a critical point  $(\bar{r}, \bar{p}, \bar{q})$ . In any case such a critical point gives rise to a (non-trivial) closed geodesic of  $(M, g_{\varepsilon})$ .

From Remark 3.1, we know that  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  is O(2)-invariant. This allows us to introduce the O(2)-category  $\operatorname{cat}_{O(2)}$ . One has

$$cat_{O(2)}(Z) \ge cat(Z/O(2)) \ge cuplength(Z/O(2)) + 1.$$

Since cuplength $(Z/O(2)) \ge N-1$ , (see [77]), then  $\operatorname{cat}_{O(2)}(Z) \ge N$ . Finally, by the Lusternik–Schnirel'man theory, M carries at least N closed geodesics, distinct modulo the action O(2). This proves the first statement.

Next, let

$$\Gamma(r, p, q) = G((r, z_{p,q})) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 h(r, z_{p,q}(t)) [\dot{z}_{p,q}, \dot{z}_{p,q}] dt$$
 (3.16)

Then (h) immediately implies that

$$\Gamma(r, p, q) \to 0 \quad \text{as } |r| \to \infty,$$
 (3.17)

Moreover, if (h2) holds, then  $\Gamma(r, p, q) > 0$  for  $r > r_0$ , and  $\Gamma(r, p, q) < 0$  for  $r < -r_0$ . Since (recall equation (3.11))

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(r, p, q) = b + \varepsilon \Gamma(r, p, q) + o(\varepsilon),$$
 (3.18)

it follows that

$$\begin{cases} \Phi_{\varepsilon}(r, p, q) > b & \text{for } r > r_0 \\ \Phi_{\varepsilon}(r, p, q) < b & \text{for } r < -r_0. \end{cases}$$

We can now exploit again the O(2) invariance.

By assumption, and a simple continuity argument,  $\{\Phi_{\varepsilon} > b\} \supset [R_0, \infty) \times Z_0$ , and similarly  $\{\Phi_{\varepsilon} < b\} \supset [-\infty, -R_0) \times Z_0$ , for a suitably large  $R_0 > 0$ . Hence  $\text{cat}_{O(2)}(\{\Phi_{\varepsilon} > b\}) \geq \text{cat}_{O(2)}(Z_0) = N$ . The same argument applies to  $\{\Phi_{\varepsilon} < b\}$ . This proves the existence of at least 2N closed geodesics.

- Remark 3.2. (i) In [25], the existence of N closed geodesics on  $S^N$  endowed with a metric close to the standard one is proved. Such a result does not need any study of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  and its behavior. The existence of 2N geodesics is, as far as we know, new. We emphasize that it strongly depends on the form of  $M = \mathbb{R} \times M_0$ .
- (ii) In [84], the metric g on M is possibly not perturbative. No multiplicity result is given.

## 3.3 The general case

In this section we consider a compact riemannian manifold  $(M_0, g_0)$ , and in analogy to the previous section, we put

$$g_{\varepsilon}(s,\xi)((r,\eta),(r,\eta)) = |r|^2 + g_0(\xi)(\eta,\eta) + \varepsilon h(s,\xi)((r,\eta),(r,\eta)).$$
 (3.19)

Again, we define  $\Lambda = \{ u = (r, x) \mid r \in H^1(S^1, \mathbb{R}), x \in H^1(S^1, M_0) \},$ 

$$E_{M_0}(x) = rac{1}{2} \int_0^1 g_0(x)(\dot{x},\dot{x}) dt, \quad E_0(r,x) = rac{1}{2} \int_0^1 |\dot{r}|^2 dt + E_{M_0}(x),$$

and finally

$$E_{\varepsilon}(r,x) = E_0(r,x) + \varepsilon G(r,x),$$

with G as in (3.7). It is well known ([57]) that  $M_0$  has a closed geodesic  $z_0$ . The functional  $E_{M_0}$  has again a critical manifold Z given by

$$Z = \{u(\cdot) = (\rho, z_0(\cdot + \tau)) \mid \rho \text{ constant}, \tau \in S^1\}.$$

Let  $Z_0 = \{z_0(\cdot + \tau) \mid \tau \in S^1\}$ . It follows that  $Z \approx \mathbb{R} \times Z_0$ . The counterpart of  $\Gamma$  in (3.11) is

$$\Gamma(r,\tau) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 h(r,z_\tau) [\dot{z}_\tau, \dot{z}_\tau] dt.$$
 (3.20)

Let us recall some facts from [56].

Remark 3.3. There is a linear operator  $A_z: T_z\Lambda(M_0) \to T_z\Lambda$ , which is a compact perturbation of the identity, such that

$$E_{M_0}''(z)[h,k] = \langle A_z h \mid k \rangle_1 = \int_0^1 \overbrace{A_z h} \bullet \dot{k} \, dt.$$

In particular,  $E_0$  satisfies (AS2).

## Definition 3.8. Let

$$\ker E_{M_0}''(z_0) = \{ h \in T_{z_0} \Lambda(M_0) \mid \langle A_{z_0} h \mid k \rangle_1 = 0 \quad \forall k \in T_{z_0} \Lambda(M_0) \}.$$

We say that a closed geodesic  $z_0$  of  $M_0$  is non-degenerate, if

$$\dim \ker E_{M_0}^{\prime\prime}(z_0) = 1.$$

Remark 3.4. For example, it is known that when  $M_0$  has negative sectional curvature, then all the geodesics of  $M_0$  are non-degenerate. See [39]. Moreover, it is easy to see that the existence of non-degenerate closed geodesics is a generic property.

**Lemma 3.3.** If  $z_0$  is a non-degenerate closed geodesic of  $M_0$ , then Z satisfies (AS2).

*Proof.* It is always true that  $T_{z_r}Z \subset \ker E_0''(z_r)$ . By (3.26), we have that  $\dim T_{z_r}Z = \dim \ker E_0''(z_r)$ . This implies that  $T_{z_r}Z = \ker E_0''(z_r)$ . A generic element of Z has the form  $(\rho, z^{\tau})$  for  $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $z^{\tau} = z(\cdot + \tau)$ ; then

$$T_{(\rho,z^{\tau})}M = \mathbb{R} \times T_{z^{\tau}}M_0,$$

and any two vector fields Y and W along a curve on  $M=\mathbb{R}\times M_0$  can be decomposed into

 $Y = h(t)\frac{d}{dt} + y(t) \in \mathbb{R} \oplus T_{z\tau} Z_0, \tag{3.21}$ 

$$W = k(t)\frac{d}{dt} + w(t) \in \mathbb{R} \oplus T_{z^{\tau}} Z_0.$$
 (3.22)

In addition, there results (see [49])

$$E_{M_0}^{"}(z_0)[y,w] = \int_0^1 \left[ g_0(D_t y, D_t w) - g_0(R_{M_0} y(t), \dot{z}_0(t)) \dot{z}_0(t) \mid w(t)) \right] dt,$$
(3.23)

and

$$R_M(r,z) = R_{\mathbb{R}}(r) + R_{M_0}(z) = R_{M_0}(z),$$
 (3.24)

where  $R_M$ ,  $R_{M_0}$ , etc. stand for the curvature tensors of M,  $M_0$ , etc. By (3.23), (3.21) and (3.22), as in the previous section,  $E_0''(\rho, z_\tau)[Y, W] = 0$  is equivalent to the system

$$\begin{cases} \ddot{h} = 0 \\ \int_0^1 g_0(z) [D_t y, D_t w] - \langle R_{M_0}(y(t), \dot{z}_r(t)) \dot{z}_r(t) \mid w(t) \rangle dt = 0. \end{cases}$$
(3.25)

As in the case of the sphere, the first equation implies that h is constant. The second equation in (3.25) implies that  $y \in \ker E''_{M_0}(z^{\tau}) = \ker E''_{M_0}(z_0)$ . Hence,

$$\ker E_0''(z_r) = \{(h, y) \mid h \text{ is constant, and } y \in \ker E_{M_0}''(z_0)\}.$$
 (3.26)

This completes the proof.

**Theorem 3.6.** Let  $M_0$  be a compact, connected manifold of dimension  $N < \infty$ . Assume that  $M_0$  admits a non-degenerate closed geodesic z, and that (in local coordinates)  $h_{ij}(p,\cdot) \to a_-$  as  $p \to -\infty$ , and  $h_{ij}(p,\cdot) \to a_+$  as  $p \to +\infty$ .

- 1. If  $a_{-}=a_{+}$  and  $h_{ij}(p,\cdot)$  satisfies (h2), then M has at least one closed geodesic.
- 2. If  $a_{-} \leq a_{+}$  and  $h_{ij}(p,\cdot)[u,v] a_{-}(u \mid v)$  is negative definite for  $p \to -\infty$  and  $h_{ij}(p,\cdot)[u,v] a_{+}(u \mid v)$  is positive definite for  $p \to +\infty$ , then M has at least two non-trivial closed geodesic.

*Proof.* Lemma 3.3 allows us to repeat all the argument in Theorem 3.5, and the result follows immediately.

## 3.4 Isolated geodesics

In this final section, we discuss one situaion where the critical manifold Z may be degenerate. Here, the non-degeneracy condition (AS3) fails, and  $T_zZ\subset\ker E_0''(z)$  strictly. Fix a closed geodesic  $Z_0$  for  $M_0$ , and put  $\tilde W=(T_{z_0}Z)^\perp$ . Since  $T_zZ\subset\ker E_0''(z)$  strictly, there exists k>0 such that  $\tilde W=(\ker E_0''(z_0))^\perp\oplus\mathbb R^k$ . Repeating the preceding finite dimensional reduction, one can find again a unique map  $\tilde w=\tilde w(z,\zeta)$ , where  $z\in Z$  and  $\zeta\in\mathbb R^k$ , in such a way that  $E_\varepsilon'=0$  reduces to an equation like

$$\nabla A(z + \zeta + \tilde{w}(z, \zeta)) = 0.$$

If  $z_0$  is an isolated minimum of the energy  $E_{M_0}$  over some connected component of  $\Lambda(M_0)$ , then it is possible to show that there exists again a function  $\Gamma \colon Z \to \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\nabla A(z+\zeta+\tilde{w}(z,\zeta))=0\iff \frac{\partial \varGamma}{\partial r}(-R,\tau)\frac{\partial \varGamma}{\partial r}(R,\tau)\neq 0$$

for some  $R \in \mathbb{R}$  and all  $\tau \in S^1$ . For more details, see [18]. In particular, we will use the following result.

**Theorem 3.7.** Let H be a real Hilbert space,  $f_{\varepsilon}: H \to \mathbb{R}$  is a family of  $C^2$ -functionals of the form  $f_{\varepsilon} = f_0 + \varepsilon G$ , and that:

(f0)  $f_0$  has a finite dimensional manifold Z of critical points, each of them being a minimum of  $f_0$ ;

(f1) for all  $z \in Z$ ,  $f_0''(z)$  is a compact perturbation of the identity.

Fix  $z_0 \in Z$ , put  $W = (T_{z_0}Z)^{\perp}$ , and suppose that  $(f_0)_{|W}$  has an isolated minimum at  $z_0$ . Then, for  $\varepsilon$  sufficiently small,  $f_{\varepsilon}$  has a critical point, provided  $\deg(\Gamma', B_R, 0) \neq 0$ .

Remark 3.5. Theorem 3.7 has been presented in a linear setting. For Riemannian manifold, we can either reduce to a *local* situation and then apply the exponential map, or directly resort to the slightly more general degree theory on Banach manifold developed in [41].

**Theorem 3.8.** Assume that  $\pi_1(M_0) \neq \{0\}$ , and that all the critical points of  $E_0$ , the energy functional of  $M_0$ , are isolated. Suppose the bilinear form h satisfies (h1), and

(h3) 
$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial r}(R,\xi)\frac{\partial h}{\partial r}(-R,\xi) \neq 0$$
 for some  $R > 0$  and all  $\xi \in S^1$ .

Then, for  $\varepsilon > 0$  sufficiently small, the manifold  $M = \mathbb{R} \times M_0$  carries at least one closed geodesic.

*Proof.* We wish to use Theorem 3.7. Since  $\pi_1(M_0) \neq \{0\}$ , then  $E_0$  has a geodesic  $z_0$  such that  $E_0(z_0) = \min E_0$  over some component C of  $\Lambda(M_0)$ . See [57].

We consider the manifold

$$Z = \{ u \in \Lambda \mid u(t) = (\rho, z_0(t+\tau)), \ \rho \ \text{constant}, \ \tau \in S^1 \}.$$

Here we do not know, a priori, if Z is non-degenerate in the sense of condition (AS2). But of course  $(E_0)_W$  has a minimum at the point  $(\rho, z_0)$ , where  $W = (T_{\rho, z^{\tau}})^{-1}Z^{-1}$ . We now check that it is isolated for  $(E_0)_W$ . We still know that  $Z = \mathbb{R} \times Z_0$ . Take any point  $(\rho, z_{\tau}) \in Z$ , and observe that  $T_{(\rho, z^{\tau})}Z = \{(r, y) \mid r \in \mathbb{R}, y \in T_{z^{\tau}}Z_0\}$ . For all  $(r, y) \in W$  sufficiently close to  $(\rho, z_0)$ , it holds in particular that  $y \perp z_{\tau}$ . Hence

$$E_0(r,y) = L_0(r) + E_{M_0}(y) \ge E_{M_0}(y) > E_{M_0}(z^{\tau}) = E_{M_0}(z_0) = E_0(\rho, z_0)$$

since  $L_0 \geq 0$  and  $z_0$  (and hence  $z^{\tau}$ ) is a minimum of  $E_{M_0}$  by assumption. Finally, thanks to assumption (h3),  $\frac{\partial \Gamma}{\partial r}(-R,\tau)\frac{\partial \Gamma}{\partial r}(R,\tau) \neq 0$ . This concludes the proof.

## 4 Semilinear Schrödinger equations

In this chapter, following closely [10], we present another application of the perturbation method to the existence of multiple positive solutions for a class of nonlinear Schrödinger Equation (NLS in short)

$$\begin{cases} -\varepsilon^2 \Delta u + u + V(x)u = K(x)u^p, \\ u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n), \ u > 0 \end{cases}$$
 (NLS)

where  $\Delta$  denotes the Laplace operator and

$$1$$

This equation has been studied under several viewpoints, and for a good review of methods and results we refer to the monograph [26] and its references.

As a first step, we introduce some motivation for the study of the *stationary Schrödinger equation*, which will be the object of our interest in the next chapters. We shall assume some knowledge of linear functional analysis and operator theory. We refer to [88] for details.

**Definition 4.1.** Given  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , we define the Schrödinger operator  $S: D(S) \subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \to L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  generated by the potential V by

$$\begin{cases} D(S) = H^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \\ Su = -\Delta u + Vu. \end{cases}$$

Lemma 4.1. 1. S is self-adjoint.

- 2.  $\lambda \in \rho(S)$  if and only if (a)  $S_{\lambda}I$  is injective and (b)  $S \lambda I)^{-1}$ :  $R(S \lambda I) \subset L^{2}(\mathbb{R}^{n}) \to H^{2}(\mathbb{R}^{n})$  is bounded.
- 3. S has no eigenvalues if  $V \equiv 0$ .

We now give some properties of the first eigenvalue of S. Let

$$\Lambda = \inf \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u|^2 + Vu) \, dx \mid u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 = 1 \right\}. \tag{4.1}$$

**Definition 4.2.** Any minimizer of the right-hand side of (4.1) is called a ground state of the Schrödinger equation

Lemma 4.2. Let  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Then

1. 
$$\Lambda \ge -||V||_{\infty} > -\infty$$
.  
2.  $\Lambda = \inf \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u|^2 + Vu) \, dx \mid u \in D(S) \quad and \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 = 1 \right\}$  and so we also have

$$\Lambda = \inf \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (Su)u \, dx \mid u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \quad and \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 = 1 \right\}.$$

3. If 
$$u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$$
 with  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^2 dx = 1$  and  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u^2 + Vu|) dx = \Lambda$ , then

$$u \in H^2(\mathbb{R}^n), u \in \ker(S - \Lambda I) \quad and \Lambda \in \sigma_p(S).$$

#### Lemma 4.3 (Properties of eigenfunctions)

1. Let  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and consider  $u \in \ker(S - \lambda I)$  for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $u \in C(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap W^{1,s}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap H^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  for all  $2 \leq s \leq \infty$  and

$$\lim_{|x| \to \infty} u(x) = 0.$$

2. Let  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and choose  $\xi < l = \lim_{R \to \infty} \operatorname{ess inf}_{|x| > R} |V(x)|$ . For any  $\mu \in (0, \sqrt{l-\xi})$ , there is a constant C, depending only on  $\xi$  and  $\mu$ , such that

$$|u(x)| \le C||u||_{\infty} e^{-\mu|x|}$$
 for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ 

provided that  $u \in \ker(S - \lambda I)$  for some  $\lambda \leq \xi$ .

In the sequel we will always assume that  $V, K: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  satisfy

- (V1)  $V \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , V and  $D^2V$  are bounded;
- $(V2) \inf_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} (1 + V(x)) > 0;$
- (K1)  $K \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , K is bounded and K(x) > 0 for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

We seek solutions  $u_{\varepsilon}$  of (NLS) that concentrate, as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ , near some point  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  (semiclassical standing waves). By this we mean that for all  $x \in$  $\mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{x_0\}$  one has that  $u_{\varepsilon}(x) \to 0$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

When K equals a positive constant, say  $K(x) \equiv 1$ , (NLS) has been widely investigated, see [6, 5, 36, 46, 63, 69, 86] and references therein. Moreover, the existence of multibump solutions has also been studied in [31, 48], see also [5] where solutions with infinitely many bumps has been proved. It has been also pointed out, see e.g. [6, Section 6], that the results contained in the forementioned papers can be extended to equations where  $u^p$  is substituted by a function g(u), which behaves like  $u^p$ . Nonlinearities depending upon xhave been handled in [47, 87] where the existence of one-bump solutions is proved.

In a group of papers Equation (NLS) is studied by perturbation arguments. For example, in [6] a Liapunov-Schmidt type procedure is used to reduce, for  $\varepsilon$  small, (NLS) to a finite dimensional equation, that inherits the variational structure of the original problem. So, one looks for the critical points of a finite dimensional functional, which leading term is strictly related to the behaviour of V near its stationary points. For instance, by a direct application of the general theory described in Chapter 3, Ambrosetti, Badiale and Cingolani ([6]) obtained the following result, in which one solution is found whenever  $K \equiv 1$  and V has a proper extremum at some point:

**Theorem 4.1.** Let  $K \equiv 1$ , and assume that  $V : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  is of class  $C^2$  and possesses a non-degenerate maximum (or minimum) at a pont  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then the equation

 $-\Delta u + V(\varepsilon x)u = |u|^{p-1}u$ 

has at least a positive solution ocncentrating near  $x_0$ .

It should be clear that more than one solution can be found under the assumption that V has well–separated proper extrema. One can indeed apply a rather standard gluing technique, similar to that appearing in [5].

As we shall see in the next sections, our approach is slightly different, and in some sense more general, since we can also find work in the "non generic" situation in which the critical points of V arise in a compact manifold like a torus or a sphere. The price we pay is that the technical framework gets a bit more involved. As a counterpart, Theorem 4.1 can be considered as a corollary or a special case of our main results.

A different approach has been carried out in another group of papers, like [36, 86, 87]. First, one finds a solution u of (NLS) as a Mountain Pass critical point of the Euler functional; after, one proves the concentration as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ . Although this second approach allows to deal with potentials V such that  $\sup V = +\infty$ , it works, roughly speaking, near minima of V, only. Actually, as pointed out in [6], see also [3, Theorem 3.2], the Morse index of u is equal to 1+ the Morse index of the stationary point V where concentration takes place. Hence u can be found as a Mountain Pass only in the case of minima of V. Such a severe restriction is even more apparent when one deals with nonlinearities depending upon x, see [87]. A case dealing with saddle-like potentials is studied in [37], but under some technical conditions involving the saddle level and the supremum of V.

The second approach sketched above has been used in [29] to obtain the existence of multiple one-bump solutions. Letting  $V_0=\inf[1+V(x)]$ , it is assumed that  $K(x)\equiv 1$  and  $\liminf_{|x|\to\infty}(1+V(x))>V_0>0$ . It has been shown that, for  $\varepsilon>0$  small, (NLS) has at least  $\operatorname{cat}(M,M_\delta)$  solutions, where  $M=\{x\in\mathbb{R}^n\mid 1+V(x)=V_0\},\ M_\delta$  is a  $\delta$ -neighbourhood of M and cat denotes the Lusternik-Schnirelman category. This result has been extended in [30] to nonlinearities like  $K(x)u^p+Q(x)u^q$ , with 1< q< p.

In the the present paper we will improve the above multiplicity result. For example, when  $K(x) \equiv 1$ , we can obtain the results summarized below.

(i) suppose that V has a manifold M of stationary points, and that M is nondegenerate in the sense of Bott, see [21]. We prove, see Theorem 4.3,

that (NLS) has at least l(M) critical points concentrating near points of M. Here l(M) denotes the cup long of M. This kind of result is new because [29, 30] deal only with (absolute) minima.

- (ii) If the points of M are local minima or maxima of V the above result can be sharpened because M does not need to be a manifold and l(M) can be substituted by  $cat(M, M_{\delta})$ , see Theorem 4.5. Unlike [29, 30], we can handle sets of local minima. Furthermore, we do not require any condition at infinity. The case of maxima is new.
- (iii) When K(x) is not identically constant, the preceding result holds true provided that V is substituted by  $A = (1+V)^{\theta}K^{-2/(p-1)}$ , where  $\theta = -(n/2) + (p+1)/(p-1)$ , see Theorem 4.4.

A similar multiplicity result holds for problems involving more general non-linearities, as in [47], see Remark 4.3.

Our approach is based on the perturbation technique introduced above. However, a straight application of the general arguments, would only provide the existence of one solution of (NLS) because that procedure leads to finding critical points of a finite dimensional functional which does not inherit the topological features of M. So, in order to find multiplicity results like those described above, it is necessary to use a different finite dimensional reduction. With this new approach one looks for critical points of a finite dimensional functional  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  which is defined in a  $\delta$ -neighbourhood  $M_{\delta}$  of M and is close to V (or A) in the  $C^1$  norm. This readily permits us to prove the multiplicity results in the case of maxima or minima, using the Lusternik–Schnirelman category. In the general case, we can use Conley theoretical arguments, see [33]. Rouglhy, it turns out that  $M_{\delta}$  is an isolating block for the flow of  $\nabla \Phi_{\varepsilon}$  and we can apply an abstract critical point result of [27] to find l(M) solutions.

#### Notation

 $-W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  denotes the usual Sobolev space, endowed with the norm

$$||u||^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u|^2 dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^2 dx.$$

- $-o_h(1)$  denotes a function that tends to 0 as  $h \to 0$ .
- $-c, C, c_i$  etc. denote (possibly different) positive constants, independent of the parameters.

#### 4.1 Preliminaries

In this section we will collect some preliminary material which will be used in the rest of the paper. In order to semplify the notation, we will discuss in detail equation (NLS) when  $K \equiv 1$ . The general case will be handled in Theorem 4.4 and requires some minor changes, only.

Without loss of generality we can assume that V(0) = 0. Performing the change of variable  $x \mapsto \varepsilon x$ , equation (NLS) becomes

$$-\Delta u + u + V(\varepsilon x)u = u^p. \tag{P_{\varepsilon}}$$

Solutions of  $(P_{\varepsilon})$  are the critical points  $u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  of

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = f_0(u) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) u^2 dx,$$

where

$$f_0(u) = \frac{1}{2}||u||^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^{p+1} dx.$$

The solutions of  $(P_{\varepsilon})$  will be found near a solution of

$$-\Delta u + u + V(\varepsilon \xi)u = u^p, \tag{4.2}$$

for an appropriate choice of  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . The solutions of (4.2) are critical points of the functional

$$F^{\epsilon\xi}(u) = f_0(u) + \frac{1}{2} V(\epsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^2 dx - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^{p+1} dx$$
 (4.3)

and can be found explicitly. Let U denote the unique, positive, radial solution of

$$-\Delta u + u = u^p, \qquad u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n). \tag{4.4}$$

Then a straight calculation shows that  $\alpha U(\beta x)$  solves  $(P_{\varepsilon})$  whenever

$$\beta = \beta(\varepsilon \xi) = [1 + V(\varepsilon \xi)]^{1/2}$$
 and  $\alpha = \alpha(\varepsilon \xi) = [\beta(\varepsilon \xi)]^{2/(p-1)}$ .

We set

$$z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x) = \alpha(\varepsilon\xi)U(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)x) \tag{4.5}$$

and

$$Z^{\varepsilon} = \{ z^{\varepsilon \xi} (x - \xi) \mid \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \}.$$

When there is no possible misunderstanding, we will write z, resp. Z, instead of  $z^{\varepsilon\xi}$ , resp  $Z^{\varepsilon}$ . We will also use the notation  $z_{\xi}$  to denote the function  $z_{\xi}(x) := z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi)$ . Obviously all the functions in  $z_{\xi} \in Z$  are solutions of (4.4) or, equivalently, critical points of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi}$ . For future references let us point out some estimates. First of all, we evaluate:

$$\partial_{\xi} z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi) = \partial_{\xi} \left[ \alpha(\varepsilon\xi) U(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)(x-\xi)) \right] =$$

$$= \varepsilon \alpha'(\varepsilon\xi) U(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)(x-\xi)) + \varepsilon \alpha(\varepsilon\xi) \beta'(\varepsilon\xi) U'(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)(x-\xi)) -$$

$$\alpha(\varepsilon\xi) U'(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)(x-\xi)).$$

Recalling the definition of  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  one finds:

$$\partial_{\xi} z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi) = -\partial_{x} z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi) + O(\varepsilon|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)|). \tag{4.6}$$

The next Lemma shows that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi})$  is close to zero when  $\varepsilon$  is small.

**Lemma 4.4.** For all  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and all  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, one has that

$$\|\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi})\| \le C \left(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon^{2}\right), \quad C > 0.$$

Proof. From

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = F^{\varepsilon\xi}(u) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] u^2 dx$$

and since  $z_{\xi}$  is a critical point of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi}$ , one has

$$(\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi})|v) = (\nabla F^{\varepsilon\xi}(z_{\xi})|v) + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] z_{\xi} v \, dx$$
$$= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] z_{\xi} v \, dx.$$

Using the Hölder inequality, one finds

$$|(\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi})|v)|^{2} \leq ||v||_{L^{2}}^{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)|^{2} z_{\xi}^{2} dx. \tag{4.7}$$

From the assumption that  $|D^2V(x)| \leq \text{const.}$  one infers

$$|V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)| \le \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| \cdot |x - \xi| + c_1 \varepsilon^2 |x - \xi|^2.$$

This implies

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 z_{\xi}^2 dx \le$$

$$c_1 \varepsilon^2 |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^2 z^2 (x - \xi) dx + c_2 \varepsilon^4 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^4 z^2 (x - \xi) dx.$$

Recalling (4.5), a direct calculation yields

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^2 z^2 (x - \xi) dx = \alpha^2 (\varepsilon \xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |y|^2 U^2 (\beta(\varepsilon \xi) y) dy$$
$$= \alpha^2 \beta^{-n-2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |y'|^2 U^2 (y') dy' \le c_3.$$

From this (and a similar calculation for for the last integral in the above formula) one infers

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 z_{\xi}^2 dx \le c_4 \varepsilon^2 |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 + c_5 \varepsilon^4. \tag{4.8}$$

Putting together (4.8) and (4.7), the Lemma follows.

# 4.2 Invertibility of $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}$ on $TZ^{\perp}$

In this section we will show that  $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}$  is invertible on  $TZ^{\perp}$ . This will be the main tool to perform the finite dimensional reduction, carried out in Section 4.3.

Let  $L_{\varepsilon,\xi}: (T_{z_{\xi}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp} \to (T_{z_{\xi}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$  denote the operator defined by setting  $(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}v|w) = D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi})[v,w]$ . We want to show

**Lemma 4.5.** Given  $\overline{\xi} > 0$  there exists C > 0 such that for  $\varepsilon$  small enough one has that

$$|(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}v|v)| \ge C||v||^2, \qquad \forall |\xi| \le \overline{\xi}, \ \forall \ v \in (T_{z_{\xi}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}.$$
 (4.9)

*Proof.* From (4.6) it follows that every element  $\zeta \in T_{z_{\xi}}Z$  can be written in the form  $\zeta = z_{\xi} - \partial_x z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x - \xi) + O(\varepsilon)$ . As a consequence,

(\*) it suffices to prove (4.9) for all  $v \in \text{span}\{z_{\xi}, \phi\}$ , where  $\phi$  is orthogonal to  $\text{span}\{z_{\xi}, \partial_x z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi)\}$ .

Precisely we shall prove that there exist  $C_1, C_2 > 0$  such that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  small and all  $|\xi| \leq |\overline{\xi}|$  one has:

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}z_{\xi}|z_{\xi}) \le -C_1 < 0. \tag{4.10}$$

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi|\phi) \ge C_2 ||\phi||^2. \tag{4.11}$$

It is clear that the Lemma immediately follows from (\*), (4.10) and (4.11).

**Proof of** (4.10). First, let us recall that, since  $z_{\xi}$  is a Mountain Pass critical point of F, then given  $\overline{\xi}$  there exists  $c_0 > 0$  such that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  small and all  $|\xi| \leq |\overline{\xi}|$  one finds:

$$D^2 F^{\epsilon \xi}(z_{\varepsilon})[z_{\varepsilon}, z_{\varepsilon}] < -c_0 < 0. \tag{4.12}$$

One has:

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}z_{\xi}|z_{\xi}) = D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}(z_{\xi})[z_{\xi},z_{\xi}] + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left[V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)\right] z_{\xi}^{2} dx.$$

The last integral can be estimated as in (4.8) yielding

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi} z_{\xi} | z_{\xi}) \le D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}(z_{\xi}) [z_{\xi}, z_{\xi}] + c_1 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + c_2 \varepsilon^2. \tag{4.13}$$

From (4.12) and (4.13) it follows that (4.10) holds.

**Proof of** (4.11). As before, the fact that  $z_{\xi}$  is a Mountain Pass critical point of F implies that

$$D^2 F^{\varepsilon \xi}(z_{\varepsilon})[\phi, \phi] > c_1 ||\phi||^2. \tag{4.14}$$

Let  $R\gg 1$  and consider a radial smooth function  $\chi_1:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\chi_1(x) = 1$$
, for  $|x| \le R$ ;  $\chi_1(x) = 0$ , for  $|x| \ge 2R$ ;  $(\chi')$ 

$$|\nabla \chi_1(x)| \le \frac{2}{R}$$
, for  $R \le |x| \le 2R$ .  $(\chi'')$ 

We also set  $\chi_2(x) = 1 - \chi_1(x)$ . Given  $\phi$  let us consider the functions

$$\phi_i(x) = \chi_i(x - \xi)\phi(x), \quad i = 1, 2.$$

A straight computation yields:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_1^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_2^2 + 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_1 \, \phi_2,$$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi|^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi_1|^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi_2|^2 + 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla \phi_1 \cdot \nabla \phi_2,$$

and hence

$$\|\phi\|^2 = \|\phi_1\|^2 + \|\phi_2\|^2 + 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [\phi_1 \, \phi_2 + \nabla \phi_1 \cdot \nabla \phi_2].$$

Letting I denote the last integral, one immediately finds:

$$I = \underbrace{\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \chi_1 \chi_2(\phi^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2)}_{I_{\phi}} + \underbrace{\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi^2 \nabla \chi_1 \cdot \nabla \chi_2}_{I'} + \underbrace{\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_1 \nabla \phi \cdot \nabla \chi_2 + \phi_2 \nabla \phi \cdot \nabla \chi_1}_{I''}.$$

Due to the definition of  $\chi$ , the two integrals I' and I'' reduce to integrals from R and 2R, and thus they are  $o_R(1)||\phi||^2$ . As a consequence we have that

$$\|\phi\|^2 = \|\phi_1\|^2 + \|\phi_2\|^2 + 2I_{\phi} + o_R(1)\|\phi\|^2, \tag{4.15}$$

After these preliminaries, let us evaluate the three terms in the equation below:

$$(\dot{L}_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi|\phi) = \underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_1)}_{\alpha_1} + \underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi_2|\phi_2)}_{\alpha_2} + 2\underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_2)}_{\alpha_3}.$$

One has:

$$\alpha_1 = (L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_1) = D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\phi_1,\phi_1] + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi) \right] \phi_1^2. \tag{4.16}$$

In order to use (4.14), we introduce the function  $\overline{\phi}_1 = \phi_1 - \psi$ , where

$$\psi = (\phi_1|z_\xi)z_\xi + (\phi_1|\partial_x z_\xi)\partial_x z_\xi.$$

Then we have:

$$D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\phi_1, \phi_1] = D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\overline{\phi}_1, \overline{\phi}_1] + D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\psi, \psi] + 2D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\overline{\phi}_1, \psi] \qquad (4.17)$$

Let us explicitely point out that  $\overline{\phi}_1 \perp \text{span}\{z_{\xi}, \partial_x z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi)\}$  and hence (4.14) implies

 $D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\overline{\phi}_{1},\overline{\phi}_{1}] \ge c_{1}||\overline{\phi}_{1}||^{2}. \tag{4.18}$ 

On the other side, since  $(\phi|z_{\xi}) = 0$  it follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (\phi_1|z_{\xi}) &= (\phi|z_{\xi}) - (\phi_2|z_{\xi}) = -(\phi_2|z_{\xi}) \\ &= -\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_2 z_{\xi} dx - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla z_{\xi} \cdot \nabla \phi_2 dx \\ &= -\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \chi_2(y) z(y) \phi(y+\xi) dy - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla z(y) \cdot \nabla \chi_2(y) \phi(y+\xi) dy. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\chi_2(x) = 0$  for all |x| < R, and since  $z(x) \to 0$  as  $|x| = R \to \infty$ , we infer  $(\phi_1|z_\xi) = o_R(1)||\phi||$ . Similarly one shows that  $(\phi_1|\partial_x z_\xi) = o_R(1)||\phi||$  and it follows that

$$||\psi|| = o_R(1)||\phi||. \tag{4.19}$$

We are now in position to estimate the last two terms in Eq. (4.17). Actually, using (4.19) we get

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\psi,\psi] = ||\psi||^{2} + V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \psi^{2} - p \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z_{\xi}^{p-1} \psi^{2} = o_{R}(1) ||\phi||^{2}.$$
 (4.20)

The same arguments readily imply

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\overline{\phi}_{1},\psi] = (\overline{\phi}_{1}|\psi) + V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \overline{\phi}_{1}\psi - p \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z_{\xi}^{p-1} \overline{\phi}_{1}\psi = o_{R}(1)||\phi||^{2}. \quad (4.21)$$

Putting together (4.18), (4.20) and (4.21) we infer

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\phi_{1},\phi_{1}] \ge ||\phi_{1}||^{2} + o_{R}(1)||\phi||^{2}. \tag{4.22}$$

Using arguments already carried out before, one has

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)| \phi_1^2 dx \le c_2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi| \chi^2(x - \xi) \phi^2(x) dx$$

$$\le \varepsilon c_3 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} y \chi(y) \phi^2(y + \xi) dy$$

$$\le \varepsilon c_4 ||\phi||^2.$$

This and (4.22) yield

$$\alpha_1 = (L_{\varepsilon,\varepsilon}\phi_1|\phi_1) \ge c_5 \|\phi_1\|^2 - \varepsilon c_4 \|\phi\|^2 + o_R(1) \|\phi\|^2. \tag{4.23}$$

Let us now estimate  $\alpha_2$ . One finds

$$\alpha_2 = (L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi_2|\phi_2) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi_2|^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (1 + V(\varepsilon x))\phi_2^2 - p \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z_{\xi}^{p-1} \phi_2^2$$

and therefore, using (V2),

$$\alpha_2 \ge c_6 ||\phi_2||^2 - p \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z_{\xi}^{p-1} \phi_2^2.$$

As before,  $\phi_2(x) = 0$  for all |x| < R and  $z(x) \to 0$  as  $|x| = R \to \infty$  imply that

$$\alpha_2 \ge c_6 \|\phi_2\|^2 + o_R(1) \|\phi\|^2.$$
 (4.24)

In a quite similar way one shows that

$$\alpha_3 \ge c_7 I_\phi + o_R(1) \|\phi\|^2.$$
 (4.25)

Finally, (4.23), (4.24), (4.25) and the fact that  $I_{\phi} \geq 0$ , yield

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi|\phi) = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 \geq c_8 \left[ \|\phi_1\|^2 + \|\phi_2\|^2 + 2I_{\phi} \right] - c_9 \varepsilon \|\phi\|^2 + o_R(1) \|\phi\|^2.$$

Recalling (4.15) we infer that

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\xi}\phi|\phi) \ge c_{10}\|\phi\|^2 - c_9\varepsilon\|\phi\|^2 + o_R(1)\|\phi\|^2.$$

Taking  $\varepsilon$  small and R large, eq. (4.11) follows. This completes the proof of Lemma 4.5.

## 4.3 The finite dimensional reduction

In this Section we will show that the existence of critical points of  $f_{\varepsilon}$  can be reduced to the search of critical points of an auxiliary finite dimensional functional. The proof will be carried out in 2 subsections dealing, respectively, with a Liapunov-Schmidt reduction, and with the behaviour of the auxiliary finite dimensional functional. In a final subsection we handle the general case in which K is not identically constant.

# 4.4 A Liapunov-Schmidt type reduction

The main result of this section is the following lemma.

**Lemma 4.6.** For  $\varepsilon > 0$  small and  $|\xi| \leq \overline{\xi}$  there exists a unique  $w = w(\varepsilon, \xi) \in (T_{z_{\xi}}Z)^{\perp}$  such that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi} + w) \in T_{z_{\xi}}Z$ . Such a  $w(\varepsilon, \xi)$  is of class  $C^2$ , resp.  $C^{1,p-1}$ , with respect to  $\xi$ , provided that  $p \geq 2$ , resp.  $1 . Moreover, the functional <math>\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi} + w(\varepsilon, \xi))$  has the same regularity of w and satisfies:

$$(\nabla \Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi_0) = 0) \Rightarrow (\nabla f_{\varepsilon} (z_{\xi_0} + w(\varepsilon, \xi_0)) = 0)$$

*Proof.* Let  $P=P_{\varepsilon\xi}$  denote the projection onto  $(T_{z_{\xi}}Z)^{\perp}$ . We want to find a solution  $w\in (T_{z_{\xi}}Z)^{\perp}$  of the equation  $P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi}+w)=0$ . One has that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z+w)=\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z)+D^2f_{\varepsilon}(z)[w]+R(\underline{z},w)$  with  $\|R(z,w)\|=o(\|w\|)$ , uniformly with respect to  $z=z_{\xi}$ , for  $|\xi|\leq\overline{\xi}$ . Using the notation introduced in the preceding Section 4.2, we are led to the equation:

$$L_{\varepsilon,\xi}w + P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z) + PR(z,w) = 0.$$

According to Lemma 4.5, this is equivalent to

$$w = N_{\varepsilon,\xi}(w)$$
, where  $N_{\varepsilon,\xi}(w) = -L_{\varepsilon,\xi}^{-1}(P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z) + PR(z,w))$ .

From Lemma 4.4 it follows that

$$||N_{\varepsilon,\xi}(w)|| \le c_1(\varepsilon|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon^2) + o(||w||). \tag{4.26}$$

Then one readily checks that  $N_{\varepsilon,\xi}$  is a contraction on some ball in  $(T_{z_{\xi}}Z)^{\perp}$  provided that  $\varepsilon > 0$  is small enough and  $|\xi| \leq \overline{\xi}$ . Then there exists a unique w such that  $w = N_{\varepsilon,\xi}(w)$ . Let us point out that we cannot use the Implicit Function Theorem to find  $w(\varepsilon,\xi)$ , because the map  $(\varepsilon,u) \mapsto P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(u)$  fails to be  $C^2$ . However, fixed  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, we can apply the Implicit Function Theorem to the map  $(\xi,w) \mapsto P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi}+w)$ . Then, in particular, the function  $w(\varepsilon,\xi)$  turns out to be of class  $C^1$  with respect to  $\xi$ . Finally, it is a standard argument, see [3, 6], to check that the critical points of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = f_{\varepsilon}(z+w)$  give rise to critical points of  $f_{\varepsilon}$ .

Remark 4.1. From (4.26) it immediately follows that:

$$||w|| \le C \left(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon^2\right),$$
 (4.27)

where C > 0.

For future references, it is convenient to estimate the derivative  $\partial_{\xi}w$ .

Lemma 4.7. One has that:

$$\|\partial_{\xi}w\| \le c \left(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + O(\varepsilon^2)\right)^{\gamma}, \qquad c > 0, \ \gamma = \min\{1, p - 1\}.$$
 (4.28)

*Proof.* In the proof we will write  $\dot{w}_i$ , resp  $\dot{z}_i$ , to denote the components of  $\partial_\xi w$ , resp.  $\partial_\xi z$ ; moreover we will set  $h(z,w)=(z+w)^p-z^p-pz^{p-1}w$ . With these notations, and recalling that  $L_{\varepsilon,\xi}w=-\Delta w+w+V(\varepsilon x)w-pz^{p-1}w$ , it follows that w satisfies  $\forall v\in (T_{z_\xi}Z)^{\perp}$ :

$$\begin{split} (w|v) + \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) w v dx - p \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^{p-1} w v dx \\ + \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] z v dx - \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} h(z,w) v dx = 0. \end{split}$$

Hence  $\dot{w}_i$  verifies

$$(\dot{w}_{i}|v) + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} V(\varepsilon x)\dot{w}_{i}vdx - p\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z^{p-1}\dot{w}_{i}vdx - p(p-1)\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z^{p-2}\dot{z}_{i}wvdx$$

$$+ \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)]\dot{z}_{i}vdx - \varepsilon \partial_{x_{i}}V(\varepsilon \xi)\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} zvdx - \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (h_{z}\dot{z}_{i} + h_{w}\dot{w}_{i})vdx = 0.$$

$$(4.29)$$

Let us set  $L' = L_{\varepsilon,\xi} - h_w$ . Then (4.29) can be written as

$$(L'\dot{w}_{i}|v) = p(p-1)\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z^{p-2}\dot{z}_{i}wv - \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)]\dot{z}_{i}v$$
$$+ \varepsilon \partial_{x_{i}} V(\varepsilon \xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} zv + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} h_{z}\dot{z}_{i}v, \quad (4.30)$$

and hence one has

$$\begin{aligned} |(L'\dot{w}_i|v)| &\leq c_1 ||w|| \cdot ||v|| + \left| \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] \dot{z} v dx \right| \\ &+ c_2 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| \cdot ||v|| + \left| \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} h_z \dot{z} v dx \right|. \end{aligned}$$

As in the proof of Lemma 4.4 one gets

$$\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] \dot{z} v dx \right| \leq \left( c_3 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + c_4 \varepsilon^2 \right) ||v||.$$

Furthermore, the definition of h immediately yields

$$\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} h_z \dot{z} v dx \right| \le c_5 ||w||^{\gamma} ||v||, \quad \text{where} \quad \gamma = \min\{1, p - 1\}.$$

Putting together the above estimates we find

$$|(L'\dot{w}_i|v)| \le \left\lceil c_6 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + c_4 \varepsilon^2 + c_6 ||w||^{\gamma} \right\rceil ||v||$$

Since  $h_w \to 0$  as  $w \to 0$ , the operator L', likewise L, is invertible for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small and therefore one finds

$$||\dot{w}|| \le (c_7 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + c_8 \varepsilon^2) + c_9 ||w||^{\gamma},$$

Finally, using (4.27) the Lemma follows.

## 4.5 The finite dimensional functional

The main purpose of this subsection is to use the estimates on w and  $\partial_{\xi}w$  established above to find an expansion of  $\nabla \Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi)$ , where  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi} + w(\varepsilon, \xi))$ . In the sequel, to be short, we will often write z instead of  $z_{\xi}$  and w instead of  $w(\varepsilon, \xi)$ . It is always understood that  $\varepsilon$  is taken in such a way that all the results discussed in the preceding Section hold.

For the reader's convenience we will divide the arguments in some steps.

Step 1. We have:

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = \frac{1}{2}||z+w||^2 + \frac{1}{2}\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x)(z+w)^2 - \frac{1}{p+1}\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (z+w)^{p+1}.$$

Since  $-\Delta z + z + V(\varepsilon \xi)z = z^p$  we infer that

$$||z||^2 = -V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^{p+1},$$
  
$$(z|w) = -V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} zw + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^p w,$$

Then we find:

$$\begin{split} \varPhi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) &= \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p+1}\right) \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^{p+1} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)\right] z^2 \\ &+ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)\right] zw + \frac{1}{2} \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x)w^2 \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} ||w||^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[(z+w)^{p+1} - z^{p+1} - (p+1)z^pw\right]. \end{split}$$

Since  $z(x) = \alpha(\varepsilon \xi) U(\beta(\varepsilon \xi)x)$ , where  $\alpha = (1+V)^{1/(p-1)}$  and  $\beta = (1+V)^{1/2}$ , see (4.5), it follows

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} z^{p+1} dx = C_0 (1 + V(\varepsilon \xi))^{\theta}, \quad C_0 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} U^{p+1}; \qquad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2}.$$

Letting  $C_1 = C_0[1/2 - 1/(p+1)]$  one has

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_{1} \left( 1 + V(\varepsilon\xi) \right)^{\theta} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi) \right] z^{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi) \right] zw + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} V(\varepsilon x)w^{2} + \frac{1}{2} ||w||^{2} - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left[ (z+w)^{p+1} - z^{p+1} - (p+1)z^{p}w \right]. \quad (4.31)$$

Step 2. Let us now evaluate the derivative of the right hand side of (4.31). For this, let us write:

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 (1 + V(\varepsilon \xi))^{\theta} + \Lambda_{\varepsilon}(\xi) + \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi), \tag{4.32}$$

where

$$\Lambda_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] z^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] z w$$

and

$$\Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) w^2 + \frac{1}{2} ||w||^2 - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ (z+w)^{p+1} - z^{p+1} - (p+1)z^p w \right].$$

It is easy to check, by a direct calculation, that

$$|\nabla \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi)| \le c_1 ||w|| \, ||\dot{w}||. \tag{4.33}$$

Furthermore, since  $V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) = \varepsilon \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot (x - \xi) + \varepsilon^2 D^2 V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon (x - \xi))[x - \xi, x - \xi]$  for some  $\tau \in [0, 1]$  we get:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] z^2 dx = \varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot (x - \xi) z^2 dx$$

$$+ \varepsilon^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} D^2 V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon (x - \xi)) [x - \xi, x - \xi] z^2 dx$$

$$= \varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot y z^2 (y) dy$$

$$+ \varepsilon^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} D^2 V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon y) [y, y] z^2 (y) dy$$

$$= \varepsilon^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} D^2 V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon y) [y, y] z^2 (y) dy.$$

Similarly, from  $V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) = \varepsilon \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon (x - \xi)) \cdot (x - \xi)$  one finds

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] z w = \varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi + \tau \varepsilon (x - \xi)) \cdot (x - \xi) z w$$

The preceding equations imply:

$$|\nabla \Lambda_{\varepsilon}(\xi)| \le c_2 \varepsilon^2 + c_3 \varepsilon ||w||. \tag{4.34}$$

Taking the gradients in (4.32), using (4.33-4.34) and recalling the estimates (4.27) and (4.28) on w and  $\dot{w}$ , respectively, we readily find:

Lemma 4.8. Let  $a(\varepsilon\xi) = \theta C_1 (1 + V(\varepsilon\xi))^{\theta-1}$ . Then one has:

$$\nabla \Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = a(\varepsilon \xi) \varepsilon \nabla V(\varepsilon \xi) + \varepsilon^{1+\gamma} R_{\varepsilon}(\xi),$$

where  $|R_{\varepsilon}(\xi)| \leq const$  and  $\gamma = \min\{1, p-1\}$ .

Remark 4.2. Using similar arguments one can show that

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 \left( 1 + V(\varepsilon \xi) \right)^{\theta} + \rho_{\varepsilon}(\xi), \quad C_1 > 0, \quad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2},$$

where  $|\rho_{\varepsilon}(\xi)| \leq \text{const.} \left(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon^2\right)$ .

### 4.6 The general case

Let us indicate the counterpart of the above results in the case in which K is not constant. Since the arguments are quite similar, we will only outline the main modifications that are needed.

After rescaling, the solutions of (NLS) are the critical points of

$$\widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(u) = \frac{1}{2} ||u||^2 + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) u^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon x) u^{p+1}.$$

The solutions of (NLS) will be found near solutions of

$$-\Delta u + u + V(\varepsilon \xi)u = K(\varepsilon \xi)u^p, \tag{4.35}$$

namely near critical points of

$$\widetilde{F}^{\varepsilon\xi}(u) = \frac{1}{2} ||u||^2 + \frac{1}{2} V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} K(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u^{p+1}.$$

If  $\widetilde{z} = \widetilde{z}^{\varepsilon\xi}$  is a solution of (4.35), then  $\widetilde{z}(x) = \widetilde{\alpha}(\varepsilon\xi)U(\widetilde{\beta}(\varepsilon\xi)x)$ , where

$$\tilde{\alpha}(\varepsilon\xi) = (1 + V(\varepsilon\xi))^{1/2}, \quad \tilde{\beta}(\varepsilon\xi) = \left(\frac{1 + V(\varepsilon\xi)}{K(\varepsilon\xi)}\right)^{1/(p-1)}.$$

This implies that

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \tilde{z}^{p+1} = C_0 A(\varepsilon \xi), \tag{4.36}$$

where

$$A(x) = (1 + V(x))^{\theta} [K(x)]^{-2/(p-1)}, \quad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2}.$$

Define  $\widetilde{L}=\widetilde{L}_{\varepsilon,\xi}$  on  $(T\widetilde{Z})^{\perp}$  by setting  $(\widetilde{L}v|w)=D^2\widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(\widetilde{z}_{\xi})[v,w]$ . As in Lemma 4.5 one shows that  $\widetilde{L}$  is invertible for  $\varepsilon$  small. Furthermore, one has

$$\widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(u) = \widetilde{F}^{\varepsilon\xi}(u) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] u^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon \xi)] u^{p+1}$$

and, as in Lemma 4.4 one finds that

$$\|\widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(u)\| \le c_1 \left( \varepsilon(|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + |\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)|) + \varepsilon^2 \right).$$

This and the invertibility of  $\widetilde{L}$  imply, as in Lemma 4.6, the existence of  $\widetilde{w}(\varepsilon,\xi)$  such that the critical points of the finite dimensional functional

$$\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = \widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(\widetilde{z}_{\xi} + \widetilde{w}(\varepsilon, \xi))$$

give rise to critical points of  $\widetilde{f}_{\varepsilon}(u)$ . Such a  $\widetilde{w}$  is  $C^1$  with respect to  $\xi$  and, as in Lemma 4.7, the following estimate holds

$$\|\partial_{\xi}\widetilde{w}\| \le c_2 \left(\varepsilon(|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + |\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)|) + O(\varepsilon^2)\right)^{\gamma}.$$

It remains to study the finite dimensional functional  $\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi)$ ,

$$\widetilde{\varPhi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} ||\widetilde{z} + \widetilde{w}||^2 + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) (\widetilde{z} + \widetilde{w})^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon x) (\widetilde{z} + \widetilde{w})^{p+1}.$$

Since now  $\|\widetilde{z}\|^2 = -V(\varepsilon\xi)\int \widetilde{z}^2 + K(\varepsilon\xi)\int \widetilde{z}^{p+1}$  and  $(\widetilde{z}|\widetilde{w}) = -V(\varepsilon\xi)\int \widetilde{z}\widetilde{w} + K(\varepsilon\xi)\int \widetilde{z}^p\widetilde{w}$ , one gets

$$\begin{split} \widetilde{\varPhi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) &= \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \frac{1}{2} K(\varepsilon x) - \frac{1}{p+1} K(\varepsilon \xi) \right) \widetilde{z}^{p+1} + \frac{1}{2} \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] \widetilde{z}^2 \\ &+ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] \widetilde{z} \widetilde{w} + \frac{1}{2} \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} V(\varepsilon x) \widetilde{w}^2 + \frac{1}{2} ||w||^2 \\ &+ K(\varepsilon \xi) \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \widetilde{z}^p \widetilde{w} - \frac{1}{p+1} \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon x) \left[ (z+w)^{p+1} - z^{p+1} - (p+1) z^p w \right] \end{split}$$

From  $K(\varepsilon x) = K(\varepsilon \xi) + \varepsilon \nabla K(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot (x - \xi) + O(\varepsilon^2)$  and since  $\int \nabla K(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot y \widetilde{z}^{p+1} = 0$  we infer:

$$\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \frac{1}{2} K(\varepsilon x) - \frac{1}{p+1} K(\varepsilon \xi) \right) \widetilde{z}^{p+1} = \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p+1} \right) \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon \xi) \widetilde{z}^{p+1} + O(\varepsilon^2).$$

Using (4.36), one finds the counterpart of (4.31), namely

$$\begin{split} \widetilde{\varPhi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) &= C_{1}A(\varepsilon\xi) + \frac{1}{2}\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}\left[V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)\right]\widetilde{z}^{2} + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}\left[V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)\right]\widetilde{z}\widetilde{w} \\ &+ \frac{1}{2}\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}V(\varepsilon x)\widetilde{w}^{2} + \frac{1}{2}\|w\|^{2} + K(\varepsilon\xi)\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}\widetilde{z}^{p}\widetilde{w} \\ &- \frac{1}{p+1}\int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}K(\varepsilon x)\left[(z+w)^{p+1} - z^{p+1} - (p+1)z^{p}w\right] + O(\varepsilon^{2}). \end{split}$$

Taking the derivative of the above equation and using the preceding estimates, one finally yields

$$\nabla \widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 \nabla A(\varepsilon \xi) + \varepsilon^{1+\gamma} \widetilde{R}_{\varepsilon}(\xi), \quad \gamma = \min\{1, p-1\}, \tag{4.37}$$

where  $|\widetilde{R}_{\varepsilon}(\xi)| \leq \text{const}$ , which is the counterpart of Lemma 4.8. Let us also point out that, like in Remark 4.2, one has:

$$\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 A(\varepsilon \xi) + O(\varepsilon). \tag{4.38}$$

### 4.7 Main results

In this section we will prove the main results of the present paper. First, some preliminaries are in order.

Given a set  $M \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $M \neq \emptyset$ , we denote by  $M_\delta$  its  $\delta$  neighbourhood. If  $M \subset N$ , cat(M,N) denotes the Lusternik-Schnirelman category of M with respect to N, namely the least integer k such that M can be covered by k closed subsets of N, contractible to a point in N. We set cat(M) = cat(M, M).

The cup long l(M) of M is defined by

$$l(M) = 1 + \sup\{k \in \mathbb{N} : \exists \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k \in \check{H}^*(M) \setminus 1, \alpha_1 \cup \dots \cup \alpha_k \neq 0\}.$$

If no such class exists, we set l(M) = 1. Here  $\check{H}^*(M)$  is the Alexander cohomology of M with real coefficients and  $\cup$  denotes the cup product. For example, if  $M = S^{n-1}$ , the (n-1)-dimensional sphere in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $l(M) = \operatorname{cat}(M) = 2$ ; however, in general,  $l(M) \leq \operatorname{cat}(M)$ .

Let us suppose that V has a smooth manifold of critical points M. According to Bott [21], we say that M is nondegenerate (for V) if every  $x \in M$  is a nondegenerate critical point of  $V_{|M^{\perp}}$ . The Morse index of any  $x \in M$ , as a critical point of  $V_{|M^{\perp}}$ , is constant and is, by definition, the Morse index of M.

We first recall a result from [27], namely Theorem 6.4 in Chapter II, adapted our notatin and purposes. See also [33].

**Theorem 4.2.** Let  $h \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and let  $\Sigma \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a smooth compact non-degenerate manifod of critical points of h. Let U be a neighborhood of  $\Sigma$  and let  $\ell \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Then, if  $\|\ell - h\|_{C^1(U)}$  is sufficiently small, the function  $\ell$  possesses at least  $\ell(\Sigma)$  critical points in U.

Roughly, the previuos theorem fits into the frame of Conley theory and extends an older result by Conley and Zehnder [34].

We are now ready to state our multiplicity results. Our first result deals with (NLS) with  $K(x) \equiv 1$ , namely with the equation  $(P_{\epsilon})$  introduced in Section 4.1.

**Theorem 4.3.** Let (V1-2) hold and suppose V has a nondegenerate smooth manifold of critical points M. Then for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small,  $(P_{\varepsilon})$  has at least l(M) solutions that concentrate near points of M.

*Proof.* First of all, we fix  $\overline{\xi}$  in such a way that  $|x| < \overline{\xi}$  for all  $x \in M$ . We will apply the finite dimensional procedure with such  $\overline{\xi}$  fixed. Since M is a nondegenerate smooth manifold of critical points of V, it is obviously a nondegenerate manifold of critical points of  $C_1(1+V(\cdot))^{\theta}$  as well.

In order to use Theorem 20 we set  $h(\xi) = C_1(1 + V(\xi))^{\theta}$ ,  $\Sigma = M$  and  $\ell(\xi) = \Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi/\varepsilon)$ . Fix a  $\delta$ -neighborhood  $M_{\delta}$  of M in such a way that  $M_{\delta} \subset \{|x| < \bar{\xi}\}$  and the only critical points of V in  $M_{\delta}$  are those of M, and let

 $U=M_{\delta}$ . From Lemma 19, the function  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\cdot/\varepsilon)$  converges to  $C_1(1+V(\cdot))^{\theta}$  in  $C^1(U)$  when  $\varepsilon \to 0$ . Hence Theorem 20 applies and we can infer the existence of at least l(M) critical points of  $\ell$ , provided  $\varepsilon > 0$  is small enough. Let  $\xi_i \in M_{\delta}$  be any of those critical points. Then  $\xi_i/\varepsilon$  is a critical point of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  and so  $u_{\varepsilon,\xi_i}(x) = z^{\xi_i}(x-\xi_i/\varepsilon) + w(\varepsilon,\xi_i)$  is a critical point of  $f_{\varepsilon}$  and hence a solution of  $(P_{\varepsilon})$ . It follows that

$$u_{\varepsilon,\xi_i}(x/\varepsilon) \approx z^{\xi_i} \left(\frac{x-\xi_i}{\varepsilon}\right)$$

is a solution of (NLS), with  $K \equiv 1$ . Any  $\xi_i$  converges to some  $\xi_i^* \in M_\delta$  as  $\varepsilon \to 0$  and, using again Lemma 19, it is easy to see that  $\xi_i^* \in M$ . This shows that  $u_{\varepsilon,\xi_i}(x/\varepsilon)$  concentrates near a point of M.

The next result deals with the more general equation (NLS). The results will be given using the auxiliary function

$$A(x) = (1 + V(x))^{\theta} [K(x)]^{-2/(p-1)}, \quad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2},$$

introduced in Subsection 4.6.

**Theorem 4.4.** Let (V1-2) and (K1) hold and suppose A has a nondegenerate smooth manifold of critical points  $\widetilde{M}$ . Then for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, (NLS) has at least  $l(\widetilde{M})$  solutions that concentrate near points of  $\widetilde{M}$ .

*Proof.* The proof is quite similar to the preceding one, by using the results discussed in Subsection 4.6.

Remark 4.3. The preceding results can be extended to cover a class of nonlinearities g(x, u) satisfying the same assumptions of [47]. In addition to some technical conditions, one roughly assumes that the problem

$$-\Delta u + u + V(\varepsilon \xi)u = g(\varepsilon \xi, u), \quad u > 0, \quad u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n), \tag{4.39}$$

has a unique radial solution  $z=z^{\varepsilon\xi}$  such that the linearized problem at z is invertible on  $(T_z Z)^{\perp}$ . In such a case one can obtain the same results as above with the auxiliary function A substituted by

$$\mathcal{A}(\varepsilon\xi) = \int\limits_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ \frac{1}{2} g(\varepsilon\xi, z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi)) - G(\varepsilon\xi, z^{\varepsilon\xi}(x-\xi)) \right] dx,$$

where  $\partial_u G = g$ . When  $g(x,u) = K(x)u^p$  one finds that  $\mathcal{A} = A$ . But, unlike such a case, the function  $\mathcal{A}$  cannot be written in an explicit way. This is the reason why we have focused our study to the model problem (NLS) when the auxiliary function A has an explicit and neat form. Let us also point out that the class of nonlinearities handled in [30] does not even require that (4.39) has a unique solution.

When we deal with local minima (resp. maxima) of V, or A, the preceding results can be improved because the number of positive solutions of (NLS) can be estimated by means of the category and M does not need to be a manifold.

**Theorem 4.5.** Let (V1-2) and (K1) hold and suppose A has a compact set X where A achieves a strict local minimum, resp. maximum.

Then there exists  $\varepsilon_{\delta} > 0$  such that (NLS) has at least  $cat(X, X_{\delta})$  solutions that concentrate near points of  $X_{\delta}$ , provided  $\varepsilon \in (0, \varepsilon_{\delta})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\delta > 0$  be such that

$$b := \inf\{A(x) : x \in \partial X_{\delta}\} > a := A_{|X|}$$

and fix again  $\overline{\xi}$  in such a way that  $X_{\delta}$  is contained in  $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x| < \overline{\xi}\}$ . We set  $X^{\varepsilon} = \{\xi : \varepsilon \xi \in X\}$ ,  $X_{\delta}^{\varepsilon} = \{\xi : \varepsilon \xi \in X_{\delta}\}$  and  $Y^{\varepsilon} = \{\xi \in X_{\delta}^{\varepsilon} : \widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \leq C_1(a+b)/2\}$ . From (4.38) it follows that there exists  $\varepsilon_{\delta} > 0$  such that

$$X^{\varepsilon} \subset Y^{\varepsilon} \subset X^{\varepsilon}_{\delta}, \tag{4.40}$$

provided  $\varepsilon \in (0, \varepsilon_{\delta})$ . Moreover, if  $\xi \in \partial X_{\delta}^{\varepsilon}$  then  $V(\varepsilon \xi) \geq b$  and hence

$$\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \ge C_1 V(\varepsilon \xi) + o_{\varepsilon}(1) \ge C_1 b + o_{\varepsilon}(1).$$

On the other side, if  $\xi \in Y^{\varepsilon}$  then  $\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \leq C_1(a+b)/2$ . Hence, for  $\varepsilon$  small,  $Y^{\varepsilon}$  cannot meet  $\partial X_{\delta}^{\varepsilon}$  and this readily implies that  $Y^{\varepsilon}$  is compact. Then  $\widetilde{\Phi}_{\varepsilon}$  possesses at least  $cat(Y^{\varepsilon}, X_{\delta}^{\varepsilon})$  critical points in  $X_{\delta}$ . Using (4.40) and the properties of the category one gets

$$cat(Y^{\varepsilon}, Y^{\varepsilon}) \ge cat(X^{\varepsilon}, X^{\varepsilon}_{\delta}) = cat(X, X_{\delta}),$$

and the result follows.

Remark 4.4. The approach carried out in the present paper works also in the more standard case when V, or A, has an isolated set S of stationary points and  $\deg(\nabla V, \Omega, 0) \neq 0$  for some neighbourhood  $\Omega$  of S. In this way we can, for example, recover the results of [47].

# 5 Magnetic fields

Let us consider the nonlinear Schrödinger equation

$$ih\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = \left(\frac{h}{i}\nabla - A(x)\right)^2\psi + U(x)\psi - f(x,\psi), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$
 (5.1)

where  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$   $(n \geq 2)$ . The function  $\psi(x,t)$  takes on complex values, h is the Planck constant, i is the imaginary unit. Here  $A \colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  denotes a magnetic potential and the Schrödinger operator is defined by

$$\left(\frac{h}{\mathrm{i}}\nabla - A(x)\right)^2 \psi := -h^2 \Delta \psi - \frac{2h}{\mathrm{i}} A \cdot \nabla \psi + |A|^2 \psi - \frac{h}{\mathrm{i}} \psi \, \operatorname{div} A \,.$$

Actually, in general dimension  $n \geq 2$ , the magnetic field B is a 2-form where  $B_{i,j} = \partial_j A_k - \partial_k A_j$ ; in the case n=3,  $B=\operatorname{curl} A$ . The function  $U\colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  represents an electric potential. In the sequel, for the sake of simplicity, we limit ourselves to the particular case in which  $f(x,t) = K(x)|t|^{p-1}t$ , with p>1 if n=2 and  $1 if <math>n\geq 3$ .

It is now well known that the nonlinear Schrödinger equation (5.1) arises

It is now well known that the nonlinear Schrödinger equation (5.1) arises from a perturbation approximation for strongly nonlinear dispersive wave systems. Many papers are devoted to the nonlinear Schrödinger equation and its solitary wave solutions.

In this section we seek for standing wave solutions to (5.1), namely waves of the form  $\psi(x,t)=e^{-iEth^{-1}}u(x)$  for some function  $u\colon\mathbb{R}^n\longrightarrow\mathbb{C}$ . Substituting this ansatz into (5.1), and denoting for convenience  $\varepsilon=h$ , one is led to solve the complex equation in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ 

$$\left(\underline{\varepsilon}\nabla - A(x)\right)^2 u + (U(x) - E)u = K(x)|u|^{p-1}u. \tag{NLS}$$

Renaming V(x)+1=U(x)-E, we assume from now on that 1+V is strictly positive on the whole  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Moreover, by an obvious change of variables, the problem becomes that of finding some function  $u:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{C}$  such that

$$\left(\frac{\nabla}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\varepsilon x)\right)^2 u + u + V(\varepsilon x)u = K(\varepsilon x)|u|^{p-1}u, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$
  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ 

Concerning nonlinear Schrödinger equation with external magnetic field, we firstly quote a paper by Esteban and Lions [42], where concentrations and

compactness arguments are applied to solve some minimization problems associated to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  under suitable assumptions on the magnetic field.

The purpose of this section is to study the time–independent nonlinear Schrödinger equation  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  in the semiclassical limit. This seems a very interesting problem since the Correspondence's Principle establishes that Classical Mechanics is, roughly speaking, contained in Quantum Mechanics. The mathematical transition is obtained letting to zero the Planck constant  $(\varepsilon \to 0)$  and solutions u(x) of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  which exist for small value of  $\varepsilon$  are usually referred as semi-classical ones (see [51]).

We remark that in the linear case, Helffer et al. in [50, 52] have studied the asymptotic behavior of the eigenfunctions of the Schrödinger operators with magnetic fields in the semiclassical limit. Note that in these papers the wells of the Schrödinger operators with magnetic fields are the same as those without magnetic field, so that one doesn't 'see' the magnetic field in the definition of the well. See also [24] for generalization of the results by [52] for potentials which degenerate at infinity.

In the case A=0, (no magnetic field), a recent extensive literature is devoted to study the time-independent nonlinear Schrödinger equation  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  in the semi-classical limit. We shortly recall the main results in literature. The first paper is due to Floer and Weinstein which investigated the one-dimensional nonlinear Schrödinger equation (with K(x)=1) and gave a description of the limit behavior of u(x) as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ . Really they proved that if the potential V has a non-degenerate critical point, then u(x) concentrates near this critical point, as  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

Later, other authors proved that this problem is really local in nature and the presence of an isolated critical point of the potential V (in the case K(x)=1) produces a semi-classical solution u(x) of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  which concentrates near this point. Different approaches are used to cover different cases (see [6, 36, 63, 69, 87]). Moreover when V oscillates, the existence of multibumps solutions has also been studied in [5, 31, 37, 48]. Furthermore multiplicity results are obtained in [29, 30] for potentials V having a set of degenerate global minima and recently in [10], for potentials V having a set of critical points, not necessarily global minima.

A natural answer arises: how does the presence of an external magnetic field influence the existence and the concentration behavior of standing wave solutions to (5.1) in the semi-classical limit?

A first result in this direction is contained in [59] where Kurata has proved the existence of least energy solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , under some assumptions linking the magnetic field  $B = (B_{i,j})$  and the electric potential V(x). The author also investigated the semi-classical limit of the found least energy solutions and showed a concentration phenomenon near global minima of the electric potential in the case K(x) = 1 and |A| is small enough.

Recently in [28], Cingolani obtained a multiplicity result of semi-classical standing waves solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ , relating the number of solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  to

the richness of a set M of global minima of an auxiliary function  $\Lambda$  defined by setting

 $\Lambda(x) = \frac{(1+V(x))^{\theta}}{K(x)^{-2/(p-1)}}, \qquad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2},$ 

(see (5.41) in section 4 for details) depending on V(x) and K(x). We remark that, if K(x) = 1 for any  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , global minima of  $\Lambda$  coincides with global minima of V. The variational approach, used in [28], allows to deal with unbounded potential V and does not require assumptions on the magnetic field. However this approach works only near global minima of  $\Lambda$ .

In the present section we deal with the more general case in which the auxiliary function  $\Lambda$  has a manifold M of stationary points, not necessarily global minima. For bounded magnetic potentials A, we are able to prove a multiplicity result of semi-classical standing waves of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ , following the perturbation approach described in the previous chapter.

Now we briefly describe the proof of the result. First of all, we highlight that solutions of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  naturally appear as *orbits*: in fact, equation  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  is invariant under the multiplicative action of  $S^1$ . Since there is no danger of confusion, we simply speak about solutions. The complex-valued solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  are found near least energy solutions of the equation

$$\left(\frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi)\right)^2 u + u + V(\varepsilon\xi)u = K(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^{p-1}u. \tag{5.2}$$

where  $\varepsilon \xi$  is in a neighborhood of M. The least energy of (5.2) have the form

$$z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \colon x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto e^{\mathrm{i}\sigma + \mathrm{i}A(\varepsilon\xi) \cdot x} \left( \frac{1 + V(\varepsilon\xi)}{K(\varepsilon\xi)} \right)^{\frac{1}{p-1}} U((1 + V(\varepsilon\xi))^{1/2} (x - \xi)) \tag{5.3}$$

where  $\varepsilon \xi$  belongs to M and  $\sigma \in [0, 2\pi]$ . As before, the proof relies on a suitable finite dimensional reduction, and critical points of the Euler functional  $f_{\varepsilon}$  associated to problem  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  are found near critical point of a finite dimensional functional  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  which is defined on a suitable neighborhood of M. This allows to use Lusternik-Schnirelman category in the case M is a set of local maxima or minima of  $\Lambda$ . We remark that the case of maxima cannot be handled by using direct variational arguments as in [28].

Again, under suitable assumptions on M, more than one solution can be found

Firstly we present a special case of our results.

#### Theorem 5.1. Assume that

- (K1)  $K \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is strictly positive and K'' is bounded;
- (V1)  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  satisfies  $\inf_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} (1 + V(x)) > 0$ , and V'' is bounded;
- (A1)  $A \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n)$ , and the jacobian  $J_A$  of A is globally bounded in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

If the auxiliary function  $\Lambda$  has a non-degenerate critical point  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, the problem  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  has at least a (orbit of) solution concentrating near  $x_0$ .

Actually, we are able to prove the following generalization.

**Theorem 5.2.** As in Theorem 1.1, assume again (K1), (V1) and (A1) hold. If the auxiliary function  $\Lambda$  has a smooth, compact, non-degenerate manifold of critical points M, then for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, the problem  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  has at least  $\ell(M)$  (orbits of) solutions concentrating near points of M.

Finally we point out that the presence of an external magnetic field produces a phase in the complex wave which depends on the value of A near M. Conversely the presence of A does not seem to influence the location of the peaks of the modulus of the complex wave. Although we will not deal with this problem, we believe that in order to have a local  $C^2$  convergence of the solutions, some assumption about the smallness of the magnetic potential A should be added, as done in [59] for minima of V.

Finally we point out that Theorem 5.1 and Theorem 5.2 hold for problems involving more general nonlinearities. See Remark 5.3 in the last section.

#### 5.1 The variational framework

We work in the real Hilbert space E obtained as the completion of  $C_0^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{C})$  with respect to the norm associated to the inner product

$$\langle u \mid v \rangle = \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla u \cdot \overline{\nabla v} + u \bar{v}..$$

Solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  are, under some conditions we are going to point out, critical points of the functional formally defined on E as

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{1}{i} \nabla - A(\varepsilon x) \right) u \right|^2 + |u|^2 + V(\varepsilon x) |u|^2 \right) dx - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon x) |u|^{p+1} dx. \quad (5.4)$$

In what follows, we shall assume that the functions V, K and A satisfy the following assumptions:

(K1)  $K \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is strictly positive and K'' is bounded;

(V1)  $V \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  satisfies  $\inf_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} (1 + V(x)) > 0$ , and V'' is bounded;

(A1)  $A \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n) \cap C^1(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R}^n)$ , and the jacobian  $J_A$  of A is globally bounded in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

Indeed,

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{1}{i} \nabla - A(\varepsilon x) \right) u \right|^2 \right) dx =$$

$$= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( |\nabla u|^2 + |A(\varepsilon x)u|^2 - 2 \operatorname{Re}\left( \frac{\nabla u}{i} \cdot A(\varepsilon x) \overline{u} \right) \right) dx,$$

and the last integral is finite thanks to the Cauchy–Schwartz inequality and the boundedness of A.

It follows that  $f_{\varepsilon}$  is actually well-defined on E.

In order to find possibly multiple critical points of (5.4), we follow the approach already presented in the previous chapter. In our context, we need to find complex—valued solutions, and so some further remarks are due.

Let  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , which will be fixed suitably later on: we look for solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  "close" to a particular solution of the equation

$$\left(\frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi)\right)^2 u + u + V(\varepsilon\xi)u = K(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^{p-1}u. \tag{5.5}$$

More precisely, we denote by  $U_c \colon \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{C}$  a least-energy solution to the scalar problem

$$-\Delta U_c + U_c + V(\varepsilon \xi)U_c = K(\varepsilon \xi)|U_c|^{p-1}U_c \quad \text{in } \mathbb{R}^n.$$
 (5.6)

By energy comparison (see [59]), one has that

$$U_c(x) = e^{i\sigma} U^{\xi}(x - y_0)$$

for some choice of  $\sigma \in [0, 2\pi]$  and  $y_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , where  $U^{\xi} : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  is the unique solution of the problem

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta U^{\xi} + U^{\xi} + V(\varepsilon \xi)U^{\xi} = K(\varepsilon \xi)|U^{\xi}|^{p-1}U^{\xi} \\
U^{\xi}(0) = \max_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} U^{\xi} \\
U^{\xi} > 0.
\end{cases} (5.7)$$

If U denotes the unique solution of

$$\begin{cases}
-\Delta U + U = U^p & \text{in } \mathbb{R}^n \\
U(0) = \max_{\mathbb{R}^n} U \\
U > 0,
\end{cases}$$
(5.8)

then some elementary computations prove that  $U^{\xi}(x) = \alpha(\varepsilon \xi) U(\beta(\varepsilon \xi)x)$ , where

$$\alpha(\varepsilon\xi) = \left(\frac{1+V(\varepsilon\xi)}{K(\varepsilon\xi)}\right)^{\frac{1}{p-1}}$$
$$\beta(\varepsilon\xi) = (1+V(\varepsilon\xi))^{1/2}.$$

It is easy to show, by direct computation, that the function  $u(x) = e^{iA(\varepsilon\xi)\cdot x}U_c(x)$  actually solves (5.5).

For  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\sigma \in [0, 2\pi]$ , we set

$$z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \colon x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mapsto e^{\mathrm{i}\sigma + \mathrm{i}A(\varepsilon\xi) \cdot x} \alpha(\varepsilon\xi) U(\beta(\varepsilon\xi)(x-\xi)). \tag{5.9}$$

Sometimes, for convenience, we shall identify  $[0,2\pi]$  and  $S^1\subset\mathbb{C}$ , through  $\eta=e^{i\sigma}$ .

Introduce now the functional  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}: E \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{\nabla u}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi)u \right) \right|^2 + |u|^2 + V(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^2 \right) dx - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^{p+1} dx,$$

whose critical point correspond to solutions of (5.5).

The set

$$Z^{\varepsilon} = \{z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} \mid \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \ \land \ \sigma \in [0, 2\pi]\} \simeq S^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n$$

is a regular manifolds of critical points for the functional  $F^{\epsilon\xi,\sigma}$ . It follows from elementary differential geometry that

$$\begin{split} T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta}}Z^{\varepsilon} &= \operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\big\{\frac{\partial}{\partial\sigma}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, \frac{\partial}{\partial\xi_{1}}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial\xi_{n}}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}\big\} = \\ &= \operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\big\{\mathrm{i}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, \frac{\partial}{\partial\xi_{1}}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial\xi_{n}}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}\big\}, \end{split}$$

where we mean by the symbol  $\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}$  that all the linear combinations must have real coefficients.

We remark that, for j = 1, ..., n,

$$\begin{split} \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_j} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} + O(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)|) + \\ &+ \mathrm{i} \alpha(\varepsilon \xi) e^{iA(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot x + \mathrm{i} \sigma} U(\beta(\varepsilon \xi)(x - \xi)) \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_j} \left( A(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot x \right) + A_j(\varepsilon \xi) \right) = \\ &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} + O(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon |J_A(\varepsilon \xi)|) + \mathrm{i} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} A_j(\varepsilon \xi), \end{split}$$

so that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_j} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} + \mathrm{i} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} A_j(\varepsilon \xi) + O(\varepsilon).$$

Collecting these remarks, we get that any  $\zeta \in T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z^{\varepsilon}$  can be written as

$$\zeta = i\ell_1 z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} + \sum_{j=2}^{n+1} \ell_j \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{j-1}} z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} + O(\varepsilon)$$

for some real coefficients  $\ell_1, \ell_2, \dots, \ell_{n+1}$ . The next lemma shows that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma})$  gets small when  $\varepsilon \to 0$ .

**Lemma 5.1.** For all  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , all  $\eta \in S^1$  and all  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, one has that  $\|\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})\| \leq C\left(\varepsilon|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|J_A(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|\operatorname{div} A(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon^2\right),\,$ for some constant C > 0.

Proof. From

$$f_{\varepsilon}(u) = F^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta}(u) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \frac{\nabla u}{i} - A(\varepsilon x) u \right|^2 - \left| \frac{\nabla u}{i} - A(\varepsilon \xi) u \right|^2 \right) +$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi) \right] u^2 - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[ K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon \xi) \right] |u|^{p+1}$$
 (5.10)

and since  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta}$  is a critical point of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta}$ , one has (with  $z=z^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta}$ )

$$\langle \nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z) \mid v \rangle = \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left( \frac{1}{i} \nabla - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) z \cdot (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) \bar{v}$$

$$+ \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) z \cdot \overline{\left( \frac{1}{i} \nabla - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) v} +$$

$$\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) z \cdot (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) \bar{v}$$

$$+ \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)) z \bar{v} - \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon\xi)) |z|^{p-2} z \bar{v}$$

$$= \varepsilon \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \frac{1}{i} (\operatorname{div} A(\varepsilon x)) z \bar{v} + 2 \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) z \cdot \overline{\left( \frac{1}{i} \nabla - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) v}$$

$$+ \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)) z \bar{v} - \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon\xi)) |z|^{p-2} z \bar{v}$$

From the assumption that  $|D^2V(x)| \leq \text{const.}$  one infers

$$|V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)| \le \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| \cdot |x - \xi| + c_1 \varepsilon^2 |x - \xi|^2$$

This implies

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma^2} \le c_1 \varepsilon^2 |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^2 z^2 (x - \xi) + c_2 \varepsilon^4 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^4 z^2 (x - \xi).$$
 (5.11)

A direct calculation yields

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi|^2 z^2 (x - \xi) = \alpha^2 (\varepsilon \xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |y|^2 U^2 (\beta(\varepsilon \xi) y) dy$$
$$= \alpha (\varepsilon \xi)^2 \beta (\varepsilon \xi)^{-n-2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |y'|^2 U^2 (y') dy' \le c_3.$$

From this (and a similar calculation for the last integral in the above formula) one infers

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 |z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}|^2 \le c_4 \varepsilon^2 |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)|^2 + c_5 \varepsilon^4.$$
 (5.12)

Of course, similar estimates hold for the terms involving K. It then follows that

$$\|\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\eta})\| < C(\varepsilon|\operatorname{div} A(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|J_A(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon^2),$$

and the lemma is proved.

## 5.2 The invertibility of $D^2 f_{\varepsilon}$ on $(TZ^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$

To apply the perturbative method, we need to exploit some non-degeneracy properties of the solution  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  as a critical point of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$ .

Let  $L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}: (T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp} \longrightarrow (T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z)^{\perp}$  be the operator defined by

$$\langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}v \mid w \rangle = D^2 f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})(v,w)$$

for all  $v, w \in (T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi}, \sigma} Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$ .

The following elementary result will play a fundamental rôle in the present section.

**Lemma 5.2.** Let  $M \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a bounded set. Then there exists a constant C > 0 such that for all  $\xi \in M$  one has

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\xi) \right) u \right|^2 + |u|^2 \ge C \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u|^2 + |u|^2) \qquad \forall u \in E.$$
 (5.13)

*Proof.* To get a contradiction, we assume on the contrary the existence of a sequence  $\{\xi_n\}$  in M and a sequence  $\{u_n\}$  in E such that  $||u_n||_E = 1$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and

$$\lim_{n \to +\infty} \left[ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\xi) \right) u_n \right|^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u_n|^2 \right] = 0. \tag{5.14}$$

In particular,  $u_n \to 0$  strongly in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{C})$ . Moreover, since M is bounded, we can assume also  $\xi_n \to \xi^* \in \overline{M}$  as  $n \to \infty$ . From

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\xi_n) \right) u_n \right|^2 =$$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( |\nabla u_n|^2 + |A(\xi_n)|^2 |u_n|^2 - 2 \operatorname{Re} \frac{1}{\mathbf{i}} \nabla u_n \cdot A(\xi_n) \overline{u_n} \right)$$

we get

$$\lim_{n \to +\infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u_n|^2 = 1$$

$$\lim_{n \to +\infty} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \frac{1}{i} \nabla u_n \cdot A(\xi_n) \overline{u_n} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore,

$$\limsup_{n \to \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla u_n| |A(\xi_n)| |u_n| \ge \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}} \nabla u_n \cdot A(\xi_n) \overline{u_n} \right|$$

$$\ge \limsup_{n \to \infty} \mathrm{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}} \nabla u_n \cdot A(\xi_n) \overline{u_n} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

From this we conclude that

$$\frac{1}{2} \le |A(\xi^*)| \limsup_{n \to \infty} ||\nabla u_n||_{L^2} ||u_n||_{L^2} \le 
\le |A(\xi^*)| \limsup_{n \to \infty} ||u_n||_{L^2} = 0,$$

which is clearly absurd. This completes the proof of the lemma.

At this point we shall prove the following result:

**Lemma 5.3.** Given  $\bar{\xi} > 0$ , there exists C > 0 such that for  $\varepsilon$  small enough one has

$$|\langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}v\mid v\rangle|\geq C||v||^2,\quad \forall |\xi|\leq \bar{\xi},\ \forall \sigma\in[0,2\pi],\ \forall v\in(T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z^\varepsilon)^\perp. \eqno(5.15)$$

*Proof.* We follow the arguments in [10], with some minor modifications due to the presence of A. Recall that

$$T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z=\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_1}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma},\ldots,\frac{\partial}{\partial \xi_n}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma},iz^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}\}.$$

Define

$$\mathcal{V} = \operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}, \dots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x_n} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}, z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}, i z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} \right\}.$$

As in the previous chapter, it suffices to prove (5.15) for all  $v \in \operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma},\phi\}$ , where  $\phi \perp \mathcal{V}$ . More precisely, we shall prove that for some constants  $C_1 > 0$ ,  $C_2 > 0$ , for all  $\varepsilon$  small enough and all  $|\xi| \leq \bar{\xi}$  the following hold:

$$\langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi} z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \mid z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \rangle \le -C_1 < 0,$$
 (5.16)

$$\langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi \mid \phi \rangle \ge C_2 ||\phi||^2 \quad \forall \phi \perp \mathcal{V}.$$
 (5.17)

For the reader's convenience, we reproduce here the expression for the second derivative of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$ :

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}(u)(v,v) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) v \right|^{2} + |v|^{2} + V(\varepsilon\xi)|v|^{2} - K(\varepsilon\xi) \left[ (p-1)\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |u|^{p-3}\operatorname{Re}(u\bar{v})u\bar{v} + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |u|^{p-1}|v|^{2} \right].$$

Moreover, since  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  is a solution of (5.5), we immediately get

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \right|^2 + V(\varepsilon\xi) |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^2 + |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^2 \right) = K(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^{p+1}.$$

From this it follows readily that we can find some  $c_0 > 0$  such that for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, all  $|\xi| \leq \bar{\xi}$  and all  $\sigma \in [0, 2\pi]$  it results

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma},z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) < c_{0} < 0.$$
(5.18)

Recalling (5.10), we find

$$\begin{split} \langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi} z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \mid z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \rangle &= D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} (z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) (z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) + \\ &+ \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)] |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^2 - \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon \xi)] |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^{p+1} + \\ &- \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon x) \right) z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \right|^2 - \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon \xi) \right) z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \right|^2 \right). \end{split}$$

It follows that

$$\langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi} z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \mid z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \rangle \leq D^2 F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} (z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) (z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}, z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) + c_1 \varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + c_2 \varepsilon |\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)| + c_3 \varepsilon |J_A(\varepsilon\xi)| + c_4 \varepsilon^2.$$
 (5.19)

Hence (5.16) follows. The proof of (5.17) is more involved. We first prove the following claim.

Claim. There results

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})(\phi,\phi) \ge c_{1}||\phi||^{2} \quad \forall \phi \perp \mathcal{V}. \tag{5.20}$$

Recall that the complex ground state  $U_c$  introduced in (5.6) is a critical point of mountain-pass type for the corresponding energy functional  $J: E \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u|^2 + |u|^2 + V(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^2) - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon\xi)|u|^{p+1}.$$
 (5.21)

Let

$$\mathcal{M} = \{ u \in E : \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (|\nabla u|^2 + |u|^2 + V(\varepsilon \xi)|u|^2) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^{p+1} \}$$

be the Nehary manifold of J, which has codimension one. Let

$$\mathcal{N} = \left\{ u \in E \colon \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\varepsilon \xi) \right) u \right|^2 + |u|^2 + V(\varepsilon \xi) |u|^2 \right) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |u|^{p+1} \right\}$$

be the Nehari manifold of  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$ . One checks readily that  $\operatorname{codim} \mathcal{N}=1$ . Recall ([59]) that  $U_c$  is, up to multiplication by a constant phase, the *unique* minimum of J restricted to  $\mathcal{M}$ . Now, for every  $u \in \mathcal{M}$ , the function  $x \mapsto e^{iA(\varepsilon\xi)\cdot x}u(x)$  lies in  $\mathcal{N}$ , and viceversa. Moreover

$$J(u) = F^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}(e^{iA(\varepsilon \xi) \cdot x}u).$$

This immediately implies that  $\min_{\mathcal{N}} F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  is achieved at a point which differs from  $e^{iA(\varepsilon\xi)\cdot x}U_c(x)$  at most for a constant phase. In other words,  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  is a critical point for  $F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  of mountain-pass type, and the claim follows by standard results (see [27]).

Let  $R\gg 1$  and consider a radial smooth function  $\chi_1:\mathbb{R}^n\longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\chi_1(x) = 1$$
, for  $|x| \le R$ ;  $\chi_1(x) = 0$ , for  $|x| \ge 2R$ ; (5.22)

$$|\nabla \chi_1(x)| \le \frac{2}{R}, \quad \text{for } R \le |x| \le 2R.$$
 (5.23)

We also set  $\chi_2(x) = 1 - \chi_1(x)$ . Given  $\phi$  let us consider the functions

$$\phi_i(x) = \chi_i(x - \xi)\phi(x), \quad i = 1, 2.$$

A straightforward computation yields:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\phi|^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\phi_1|^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\phi_2|^2 + 2 \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_1 \, \overline{\phi}_2,$$

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi|^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi_1|^2 + \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |\nabla \phi_2|^2 + 2 \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla \phi_1 \cdot \overline{\nabla \phi_2},$$

and hence

$$\|\phi\|^2 = \|\phi_1\|^2 + \|\phi_2\|^2 + 2\operatorname{Re}\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left[\phi_1 \,\overline{\phi}_2 + \nabla \phi_1 \cdot \overline{\nabla \phi_2}\right].$$

Letting I denote the last integral, one immediately finds:

$$I = \underbrace{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \chi_1 \chi_2(\phi^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2)}_{I_{\phi}} + \underbrace{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi^2 \nabla \chi_1 \cdot \nabla \chi_2}_{I'} + \underbrace{\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} (\phi_2 \nabla \chi_1 \cdot \overline{\nabla \phi} + \overline{\phi_1} \nabla \phi \cdot \nabla \chi_2)}_{I''}.$$

Due to the definition of  $\chi$ , the two integrals I' and I'' reduce to integrals from R and 2R, and thus they are  $o_R(1)||\phi||^2$ , where  $o_R(1)$  is a function which tends to 0, as  $R \to +\infty$ . As a consequence we have that

$$\|\phi\|^2 = \|\phi_1\|^2 + \|\phi_2\|^2 + 2I_{\phi} + o_R(1)\|\phi\|^2. \tag{5.24}$$

After these preliminaries, let us evaluate the three terms in the equation below:

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi|\phi) = \underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_1)}_{\alpha_1} + \underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi_2|\phi_2)}_{\alpha_2} + 2\underbrace{(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_2)}_{\alpha_3}.$$

One has:

$$\alpha_{1} = \langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi_{1} \mid \phi_{1} \rangle = D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})(\phi_{1},\phi_{1}) + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)]|\phi_{1}|^{2}$$
$$-\int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [K(\varepsilon x) - K(\varepsilon\xi)]|\phi_{1}|^{p+1} + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left| \left( \left( \frac{\nabla}{i} - A(\varepsilon x) \right) \phi_{1} \right|^{2} - \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{i} - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) \phi_{1} \right|^{2} \right).$$

In order to use (5.20), we introduce the function  $\phi_1^* = \phi_1 - \psi$ , where  $\psi$  is the projection of  $\phi_1$  onto  $\mathcal{V}$ :

$$\psi = (\phi_1 | z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}) z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} ||z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}||^{-2} + (\phi_1 | iz^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}) iz^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} ||z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}||^{-2} + \sum_{i} (\phi_1 |\partial_{x_i} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}) \partial_{x_i} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma} ||\partial_{x_i} z^{\varepsilon \xi, \sigma}||^{-2}.$$

Then we have:

$$D^{2}F^{\epsilon\xi}[\phi_{1},\phi_{1}] = D^{2}F^{\epsilon\xi}[\phi_{1}^{*},\phi_{1}^{*}] + D^{2}F^{\epsilon\xi}[\psi,\psi] + 2\operatorname{Re}D^{2}F^{\epsilon\xi}[\phi_{1}^{*},\psi]. \quad (5.25)$$

Since  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  is orthogonal to  $\partial_{x,}z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$ ,  $i=1,\ldots,n$ , then one readily checks that  $\phi_1^* \perp \mathcal{V}$  and hence (5.20) implies

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\phi_{1}^{*},\phi_{1}^{*}] \ge c_{1}\|\phi_{1}^{*}\|^{2}. \tag{5.26}$$

On the other side, since  $(\phi|z^{\epsilon\xi,\sigma})=0$  it follows:

$$\begin{split} (\phi_1|z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) &= (\phi|z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) - (\phi_2|z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) = -(\phi_2|z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) \\ &= -\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi_2 z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} - \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} \cdot \nabla \phi_2 \\ &= -\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \chi_2(y) z(y) \phi(y+\xi) dy - \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \nabla z(y) \cdot \nabla \chi_2(y) \phi(y+\xi) dy. \end{split}$$

Since  $\chi_2(x) = 0$  for all |x| < R, and since  $z(x) \to 0$  as  $|x| = R \to \infty$ , we infer  $(\phi_1|z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) = o_R(1)||\phi||$ . Similarly one shows that  $(\phi_1|\partial_x z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}) = o_R(1)||\phi||$  and it follows that

$$||\psi|| = o_R(1)||\phi||. \tag{5.27}$$

We are now in position to estimate the last two terms in equation (5.25). Actually, using Lemma 3.1 we get

$$D^{2}F^{\varepsilon\xi}[\psi,\psi] \geq C||\psi||^{2} + V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \psi^{2}$$

$$-K(\varepsilon\xi) \left[ \operatorname{Re}(p-1) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^{p-3} \operatorname{Re}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}\bar{\psi}) z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}\bar{\psi} + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^{p-1} |\psi|^{2} \right] = o_{R}(1) ||\phi||^{2}.$$
(5.28)

The same arguments readily imply

$$\operatorname{Re} D^{2} F^{\epsilon \xi} [\phi_{1}^{*}, \psi] = o_{R}(1) ||\phi||^{2}. \tag{5.29}$$

Putting together (5.26), (5.28) and (5.29) we infer

$$D^{2}F^{\epsilon\xi}[\phi_{1},\phi_{1}] \ge C||\phi_{1}||^{2} + o_{R}(1)||\phi||^{2}.$$
(5.30)

Using arguments already carried out before, one has

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon \xi)| \phi_1^2 \le \varepsilon c_2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |x - \xi| \chi_1^2(x - \xi) \phi^2(x)$$

$$\le \varepsilon c_3 \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |y| \chi_1^2(y) \phi^2(y + \xi) dy$$

$$\le \varepsilon c_4 R ||\phi||^2,$$

and similarly for the terms containing K. This and (5.30) yield

$$\alpha_1 = (L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi_1|\phi_1) \ge c_5 ||\phi_1||^2 - \varepsilon c_4 R ||\phi||^2 + o_R(1) ||\phi||^2.$$
 (5.31)

Let us now estimate  $\alpha_2$ . One finds

$$\alpha_2 = \langle L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi} \phi_2 \mid \phi_2 \rangle \ge c_6 ||\phi_2||^2 + o_R(1) ||\phi||^2.$$
 (5.32)

In a quite similar way one shows that

$$\alpha_3 \ge c_7 I_\phi + o_R(1) \|\phi\|^2.$$
 (5.33)

Finally, (5.31), (5.32), (5.33) and the fact that  $I_{\phi} \geq 0$ , yield

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi|\phi) = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 \geq c_8 \left[ ||\phi_1||^2 + ||\phi_2||^2 + 2I_{\phi} \right] - c_9 R\varepsilon ||\phi||^2 + o_R(1)||\phi||^2.$$

Recalling (5.24) we infer that

$$(L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}\phi|\phi) \ge c_{10}||\phi||^2 - c_9R\varepsilon||\phi||^2 + o_R(1)||\phi||^2.$$

Taking  $R = \varepsilon^{-1/2}$ , and choosing  $\varepsilon$  small, equation (5.17) follows. This completes the proof.

#### 5.3 The finite dimensional reduction

In this Section we will show that the existence of critical points of  $f_{\varepsilon}$  can be reduced to the search of critical points of an auxiliary finite dimensional functional. The proof will be carried out in two subsections dealing, respectively, with a Liapunov-Schmidt reduction, and with the behaviour of the auxiliary finite dimensional functional.

## 5.4 A Liapunov-Schmidt type reduction

The main result of this section is the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.4.** For  $\varepsilon > 0$  small,  $|\xi| \leq \overline{\xi}$  and  $\sigma \in [0, 2\pi]$ , there exists a unique  $w = w(\varepsilon, \sigma, \xi) \in (T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi}, \sigma} Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$  such that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi, \sigma} + w) \in T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi}, \sigma} Z^{\varepsilon}$ . Such a  $w(\varepsilon, \sigma, \xi)$  is of class  $C^2$ , resp.  $C^{1,p-1}$ , with respect to  $\xi$ , provided that  $p \geq 2$ , resp.  $1 . Moreover, the functional <math>\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma, \xi) = f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi, \sigma} + w(\varepsilon, \sigma, \xi))$  has the same regularity as w and satisfies:

$$\nabla \Phi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma_0, \xi_0) = 0 \iff \nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z_{\xi_0} + w(\varepsilon, \sigma_0, \xi_0)) = 0.$$

Proof. Let  $P=P_{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  denote the projection onto  $(T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$ . We want to find a solution  $w\in (T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z)^{\perp}$  of the equation  $P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}+w)=0$ . One has that  $\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z+w)=\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z)+D^2f_{\varepsilon}(z)[w]+R(z,w)$  with ||R(z,w)||=o(||w||), uniformly with respect to  $z=z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$ , for  $|\xi|\leq \overline{\xi}$ . Using the notation introduced in the previous section, we are led to the equation:

$$L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\varepsilon}w + P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z) + PR(z,w) = 0.$$

According to Lemma 5.3, this is equivalent to

$$w = N_{\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma}(w)$$
, where  $N_{\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma}(w) = -L_{\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi}^{-1}\left(P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z) + PR(z,w)\right)$ .

From Lemma 5.1 it follows that

$$||N_{\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma}(w)|| \le c_1(\varepsilon|\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + +\varepsilon|\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon|J_A(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon^2) + o(||w||). \quad (5.34)$$

Then one readily checks that  $N_{\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma}$  is a contraction on some ball in  $(T_{z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}}Z^{\varepsilon})^{\perp}$  provided that  $\varepsilon>0$  is small enough and  $|\xi|\leq \overline{\xi}$ . Then there exists a unique w such that  $w=N_{\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma}(w)$ . Let us point out that we cannot use the Implicit Function Theorem to find  $w(\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma)$ , because the map  $(\varepsilon,u)\mapsto P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(u)$  fails to be  $C^2$ . However, fixed  $\varepsilon>0$  small, we can apply the Implicit Function Theorem to the map  $(\xi,\sigma,w)\mapsto P\nabla f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}+w)$ . Then, in particular, the function  $w(\varepsilon,\xi,\sigma)$  turns out to be of class  $C^1$  with respect to  $\xi$  and  $\sigma$ . Finally, it is a standard argument, see [3, 6], to check that the critical points of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\xi,\sigma)=f_{\varepsilon}(z+w)$  give rise to critical points of  $f_{\varepsilon}$ .

Remark 5.1. Since  $f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma})$  is actually independent of  $\sigma$ , the implicit function w is constant with respect to that variable. As a result, there exists a functional  $\Psi_{\varepsilon}: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma,\xi) = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi), \quad \forall \sigma \in [0,2\pi], \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

In the sequel, we will omit the dependence of w on  $\sigma$ , even it is defined over  $S^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n$ .

Remark 5.2. From (5.34) it immediately follows that:

$$||w|| < C(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon |\nabla K(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon |J_A(\varepsilon \xi)| + \varepsilon^2),$$
 (5.35)

where C > 0.

The following result can be proved by adapting the same argument as in [10].

Lemma 5.5. One has that:

$$\|\nabla_{\xi}w\| \le c \left(\varepsilon |\nabla V(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon |\nabla K(\varepsilon\xi)| + \varepsilon |J_A(\varepsilon\xi)| + O(\varepsilon^2)\right)^{\gamma}, \qquad (5.36)$$

where  $\gamma = \min\{1, p-1\}$  and c > 0 is some constant.

## 5.5 The finite dimensional functional

The purpose of this subsection is to give an explicit form to the finite-dimensional functional  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma,\xi) = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} + w(\varepsilon,\xi))$ .

Recall the precise definition of  $z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  given in (5.9). For brevity, we set in the sequel  $z=z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}$  and  $w=w(\varepsilon,\xi)$ .

Since z satisfies (5.5), we easily find the following relations:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left| \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathbf{i}} - A(\varepsilon \xi) \right) z \right|^2 + |z|^2 + V(\varepsilon \xi) |z|^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon \xi) |z|^{p+1} \tag{5.37}$$

$$\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) z \cdot \overline{\left( \frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon\xi) \right) w} + \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} z \bar{w} + \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} V(\varepsilon\xi) z \bar{w} = \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} K(\varepsilon\xi) |z|^{p-1} z \bar{w} . \quad (5.38)$$

Hence we get

$$\begin{split} \varPhi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma,\xi) &= f_{\varepsilon}(z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma} + w(\varepsilon,\sigma,\xi)) = \\ &= K(\varepsilon\xi) \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p+1}\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |z|^{p+1} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)|^{2} z^{2} + \\ \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) z \cdot (A(\varepsilon\xi) - A(\varepsilon x)) \bar{w} + \varepsilon \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}} z \bar{w} \operatorname{div} A(\varepsilon x) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} \left| \left(\frac{\nabla}{\mathrm{i}} - A(\varepsilon x)\right) w \right|^{2} + \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)] z \bar{w} \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)] |w|^{2} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} [V(\varepsilon x) - V(\varepsilon\xi)] z^{2} \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} V(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |w|^{2} - \frac{1}{p+1} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} K(\varepsilon x) (|z+w|^{p+1} - |z|^{p+1} - (p+1)|z|^{p-1} z \bar{w}) \\ &+ \operatorname{Re} K(\varepsilon\xi) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n}} |z|^{p-1} z \bar{w} + O(\varepsilon^{2}) \,. \end{split}$$
 (5.39)

Here we have used the estimate

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left(\frac{1}{2}K(\varepsilon x) - \frac{1}{p+1}K(\varepsilon \xi)\right) |z|^{p+1} \ = \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p+1}\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(\varepsilon \xi) |z|^{p+1} \ + O(\varepsilon^2),$$

which follows from the boundedness of K''. Since we know that

$$\alpha(\varepsilon\xi) = \left(\frac{1 + V(\varepsilon\xi)}{K(\varepsilon\xi)}\right)^{\frac{1}{p-1}}$$
$$\beta(\varepsilon\xi) = (1 + V(\varepsilon\xi))^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

we get immediately

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |z^{\varepsilon\xi,\sigma}|^{p+1} = C_0 \Lambda(\varepsilon\xi) [K(\varepsilon\xi)]^{-1}, \tag{5.40}$$

where we define the auxiliary function

$$\Lambda(x) = \frac{(1+V(x))^{\theta}}{K(x)^{2/(p-1)}}, \qquad \theta = \frac{p+1}{p-1} - \frac{n}{2}, \tag{5.41}$$

and  $C_0 = ||U||_{L^2}$ . Now one can estimate the various terms in (5.39) by means of (5.35) and (5.36), to prove that

$$\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\sigma,\xi) = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 \Lambda(\varepsilon\xi) + O(\varepsilon). \tag{5.42}$$

Similarly,

$$\nabla \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) = C_1 \nabla \Lambda(\varepsilon \xi) + \varepsilon^{1+\gamma} O(1), \tag{5.43}$$

where  $C_1 = \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p+1}\right) C_0$ . We omit the details, which can be deduced without effort from [10].

### 5.6 Statement and proof of the main results

In this section we exploit the finite-dimensional reduction performed in the previous section to find existence and multiple solutions of (NLS). Recalling Lemma 5.4, we have to look for critical points of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  as a function of the variables  $(\sigma, \xi) \in [0, 2\pi] \times \mathbb{R}^n$  (or, equivalently,  $(\eta, \xi) \in S^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n$ ).

In what follows, we use the following notation: given a set  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and a number  $\rho > 0$ ,

$$\Omega_{\rho} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \operatorname{dist}(x, \Omega) < \rho \}.$$

We start with the following result, which deals with local extrema.

**Theorem 5.3.** Suppose that (K1), (V1) and (A1) hold. Assume moreover that there is a compact set  $M \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  over which  $\Lambda$  achieves an isolated strict local minimum with value a. By this we mean that for some  $\delta > 0$ ,

$$b \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf_{x \in \partial M_{\delta}} \Lambda(x) > a. \tag{5.44}$$

Then there exists  $\varepsilon_{\delta} > 0$  such that  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  has at least  $\operatorname{cat}(M, M_{\delta})$  (orbits of) solutions concentrating near  $M_{\delta}$ , for all  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_{\delta}$ .

Conversely, assume that K is a compact set  $\mathbb{R}^n$  over which  $\Lambda$  achieves an isolated strict local maximum with value b, namely for some  $\gamma > 0$ ,

$$a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf_{x \in \partial K_{\alpha}} \Lambda(x) < b. \tag{5.45}$$

Then there exists  $\varepsilon_{\gamma} > 0$  such that  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  has at least  $\operatorname{cat}(K, K_{\gamma})$  (orbits of) solutions concentrating near  $K_{\gamma}$ , for all  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_{\gamma}$ .

*Proof.* As in the previous theorem, one has  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}(\eta, \xi) = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi)$ . Now choose  $\bar{\xi} > 0$  in such a way that  $M_{\delta} \subset \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid |x| < \bar{\xi}\}$ . Define again  $\overline{\Lambda}$  as in the proof of Theorem 5.4. Let

$$\begin{split} N^{\varepsilon} &= \{ \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \varepsilon \xi \in M \} \\ N^{\varepsilon}_{\delta} &= \{ \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \varepsilon \xi \in M_{\delta} \} \\ \Theta^{\varepsilon} &= \{ \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \varPsi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \leq C_1 \frac{a+b}{2} \}. \end{split}$$

From (5.42) we get some  $\varepsilon_{\delta} > 0$  such that

$$N^{\varepsilon} \subset \Theta^{\varepsilon} \subset N_{\delta}^{\varepsilon}, \tag{5.46}$$

for all  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_{\delta}$ . To apply standard category theory, we need to prove that  $\Theta^{\varepsilon}$  is compact. To this end, as can be readily checked, it suffices to prove that  $\Theta^{\varepsilon}$  cannot touch  $\partial N_{\delta}^{\varepsilon}$ . But if  $\varepsilon \xi \in \partial M$ , one has  $\overline{A}(\varepsilon \xi) \geq b$  by the very definition of  $\delta$ , and so

$$\Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \ge C_1 \overline{\Lambda}(\varepsilon \xi) + o_{\varepsilon}(1) \ge C_1 b + o_{\varepsilon}(1).$$

On the other hand, for all  $\xi \in \Theta^{\varepsilon}$  one has also  $\Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi) \leq C_1 \frac{a+b}{2}$ . We can conclude from (5.46) and elementary properties of the Lusternik–Schnirel'man category that  $\Psi_{\varepsilon}$  has at least

$$cat(\Theta^{\varepsilon}, \Theta^{\varepsilon}) \ge cat(N^{\varepsilon}, N^{\varepsilon}_{\delta}) = cat(N, N_{\delta})$$

critical points in  $\Theta^{\varepsilon}$ , which correspond to at least  $\operatorname{cat}(M, M_{\delta})$  orbits of solutions to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ . Now, let  $(\eta^*, \xi^*) \in S^1 \times M_{\delta}$  a critical point of  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$ . Hence this point  $(\eta^*, \xi^*)$  localizes a solution  $u_{\varepsilon, \eta^*, \xi^*}(x) = z^{\varepsilon \xi^*, \eta^*}(x) + w(\varepsilon, \eta^*, \xi^*)$  of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ . Recalling the change of variable which allowed us to pass from (NLS) to  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ , we find that

$$u_{\varepsilon,\eta^*,\xi^*}(x) \approx z^{\varepsilon\xi^*,\eta^*}(\frac{x-\xi^*}{\varepsilon}).$$

solves (NLS). The concentration statement follows from standard arguments ([6, 10]). The Proof of the second part of Theorem 5.4 follows with analogous arguments.

Theorem 5.1 is an immediate corollary of the previous one when  $x_0$  is either a nondegenerate local maximum or minimum for  $\Lambda$ . We remark that the case in which  $\Lambda$  has a maximum cannot be handled using a direct variational approach and the arguments in [28] cannot be applied.

To treat the general case, we need some more work. In order to present our main result, we need to introduce some topological concepts.

Given a set  $M \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , the  $cup\ long\ of\ M$  is by definition

$$\ell(M) = 1 + \sup\{k \in \mathbb{N} \mid (\exists \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in \check{H}^*(M) \setminus \{1\}) (\alpha_1 \cup \dots \cup \alpha_k \neq 0)\}.$$

If no such classes exists, we set  $\ell(M)=1$ . Here  $\check{H}^*(M)$  is the Alexander cohomology of M with real coefficients, and  $\cup$  denotes the cup product. It is well known that  $\ell(S^{n-1})=\cot(S^{n-1})=2$ , and  $\ell(T^n)=\cot(T^n)=n+1$ , where  $T^n$  is the standard n-dimensional torus. But in general, one has  $\ell(M)\leq\cot(M)$ .

The following definition dates back to Bott ([20]).

**Definition 5.1.** We say that M is non-degenerate for a  $\mathbb{C}^2$  function  $I \colon \mathbb{R}^N \to \mathbb{R}$  if M consists of Morse theoretically non-degenerate critical points for the restriction  $I_{|M^{\perp}}$ .

To prove our existence result, we use again Theorem 4.2. We are now ready to prove an existence and multiplicity result for (NLS).

**Theorem 5.4.** Let (V1), (K1) and (A1) hold. If the auxiliary function  $\Lambda$  has a smooth, compact, non-degenerate manifold of critical points M, then for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, the problem  $(S_{\varepsilon})$  has at least  $\ell(M)$  (orbits of) solutions concentrating near points of M.

Proof. By Remark 5.1, we have to find critical points of  $\Psi_{\varepsilon} = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\xi)$ . Since M is compact, we can choose  $\bar{\xi} > 0$  so that  $|x| < \bar{\xi}$  for all points  $x \in M$ . From this moment,  $\bar{\xi}$  is kept fixed. form  $\{\eta^*\} \times M$  is obviously a non-degenerate critical manifold We set now  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $J = \Lambda$ ,  $\Sigma = M$ , and  $I(\xi) = \Psi_{\varepsilon}(\eta, \xi/\varepsilon)$ . Select  $\delta > 0$  so that  $M_{\delta} \subset \{x : |x| < \bar{\xi}\}$ , and no critical points of  $\Lambda$  are in  $M_{\delta}$ , except for those of M. Set  $\mathcal{U} = M_{\delta}$ . From (5.42) and (5.43) it follows that I is close to J in  $C^1(\overline{\mathcal{U}})$  when  $\varepsilon$  is very small. We can apply Theorem 4.2 to find at least  $\ell(M)$  critical points  $\{\xi_1, \ldots, \xi_{\ell(M)}\}$  for  $\Psi_{\varepsilon}$ , provided  $\varepsilon$  is small enough. Hence the orbits  $S^1 \times \{\xi_1\}, \ldots, S^1 \times \{\xi_{\ell(M)}\}$  consist of critical points for  $\Phi_{\varepsilon}$  which produce solutions of  $(S_{\varepsilon})$ . The concentration statement follows as in [10].

Remark 5.3. We point out that Theorem 1.1, Theorem 5.3 and Theorem 5.4 hold for problems involving more general nonlinearities g(x,u) satisfying the same assumptions in [47] (see also Remark 5.4 in [10]). For our approach, we need the uniqueness of the radial solution z of the corresponding scalar equation

$$-\Delta u + u + V(\varepsilon \xi)u = g(\varepsilon \xi, u), \quad u > 0, \quad u \in W^{1,2}(\mathbb{R}^n).$$
 (5.47)

Let us also remark that in [28] the class of nonlinearities handled does not require that equation (5.47) has a unique solution.

## 6 Homoclinic solutions of Hamiltonian systems

A different tool for analyzing non-compact problems has been studied by Rabier and Stuart ([72, 73]). It makes use of a recent notion of topological degree, introduced by Fitzpatrick, Pejsachowicz and Rabier, for  $C^1$  Fredholm maps between Banach spaces. In this chapter we summarize some results obtained in the joint paper [80].

### 6.1 Basic definitions of the new topological degree

Consider two real Banach spaces X and Y. First of all, one defines the **parity** of a continuous path  $\lambda \in [a,b] \mapsto A(\lambda)$  of bounded linear Fredholm operators with index zero from X into Y. It is always possible to find a **parametrix** for this path, namely a continuous function  $B \colon [a,b] \to GL(Y,X)$  such that the composition  $B(\lambda)A(\lambda) \colon X \to X$  is a compact perturbation of the identity for every  $\lambda \in [a,b]$ . If A(a) and A(b) belong to GL(X,Y), then the parity of the path A on [a,b] is by definition

$$\pi(A(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in [a, b]) = \deg(B(a)A(a)) \deg(B(b)A(b)).$$

This is a good definition in the sense that it is independent of the parametrix B. The following criterion can be useful for evaluating the parity of an admissible path.

**Proposition 6.1.** Let  $A: [a,b] \to B(X,Y)$  be a continuous path of bounded linear operators having the following properties.

- (i)  $A \in C^1([a, b], B(X, Y))$ .
- (ii)  $A(\lambda): X \to Y$  is a Fredholm operator of index zero for each  $\lambda \in [a,b]$ .
- (iii) There exists  $\lambda_0 \in (a, b)$  such that

$$A'(\lambda_0)[\ker A(\lambda_0)] \oplus \operatorname{rge} A(\lambda_0) = Y$$
 (6.1)

 $in\ the\ sense\ of\ a\ topological\ direct\ sum.$ 

Then there exists  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that  $[\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon] \subset [a, b]$ ,

$$A(\lambda) \in GL(X,Y) \text{ for } \lambda \in [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0) \cup (\lambda_0, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon]$$
 (6.2)

and

$$\pi(A(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon]) = (-1)^k \tag{6.3}$$

where  $k = \dim \ker A(\lambda_0)$ .

The proof of this proposition is essentially contained in [43, 44].

We remark that given a continuous path  $A:[a,b] \to \Phi_0(X,Y)$  and any  $\lambda_0 \in [a,b]$  such that  $A(\lambda) \in GL(X,Y)$  for all  $\lambda \neq \lambda_0$ , the parity  $\pi(A(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon])$  is the same for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  sufficiently small. This number is then called the parity of A across  $\lambda_0$ .

This degree has many features of the ordinary Leray–Schauder degree, but the homotopy invariance is only up to a  $\pm$  sign. We refer to [80] for a short review of this concept.

We recall here that a bounded linear operator  $L: X \to Y$  acting between two Banach spaces X and Y is said to be *Fredholm of index zero* if its range L(X) is closed in Y, ker L is finite-dimensional and dim ker  $L = \operatorname{codim} L(X)$ .

**Definition 6.1.** Let X and Y be real Banach spaces and consider a function  $F \in C^1(\Lambda \times X, Y)$ , where  $\Lambda$  is an open interval. Let  $P(\lambda, x) = \lambda$  be the projection of  $\mathbb{R} \times X$  onto  $\mathbb{R}$ . We say that  $\Lambda$  is an admissible interval for F provided that

- (i) for all  $(\lambda, x) \in \Lambda \times X$ , the bounded linear operator  $\partial_x F(\lambda, x) \colon X \to Y$  is a Fredholm operator of index zero;
- (ii) for any compact subset  $K \subset Y$  and any closed bounded subset W of  $\mathbb{R} \times X$  such that

$$\inf \Lambda < \inf PW < \sup PW < \sup \Lambda.$$

it results that  $F^{-1}(K) \cap W$  is a compact subset of  $\mathbb{R} \times X$ .

In figure 6.1, the set  $F^{-1}(K)$  is not compact. Nevertheless, the shaded region represents the compact set  $F^{-1}(K) \cap W$ .

The following theorem shows that the new degree  $\pi$  for Fredholm maps of index zero allows us to recast a bifurcation theorem like the one due to Rabinowitz.

**Theorem 6.1.** Let X and Y be real Banach spaces and consider a function  $F \in C^1(\Lambda \times X, Y)$  where  $\Lambda$  is an admissible open interval for F. Suppose that  $\lambda_0 \in \Lambda$  and that there exists  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that  $[\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon] \subset \Lambda$ ,

$$D_x F(\lambda, 0) \in GL(X, Y) \text{ for } \lambda \in [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon] \setminus {\lambda_0}$$

and

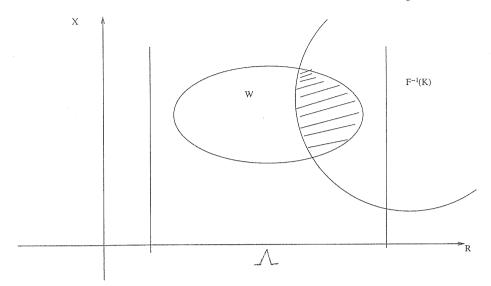


Fig. 6.1. Properness on bounded subsets

$$\pi(D_x F(\lambda, 0) \mid [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon]) = -1.$$

Let  $Z = \{(\lambda, u) \in \Lambda \times X \mid u \neq 0 \text{ and } F(\lambda, u) = 0\}$  and let C denote the connected component of  $Z \cup \{(\lambda_0, 0)\}$  containing  $(\lambda_0, 0)$ .

Then C has at least one of the following properties:

- (1) C is unbounded.
- (2) The closure of C contains a point  $(\lambda_1, 0)$  where  $\lambda_1 \in \Lambda \setminus [\lambda_0 \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon]$  and  $D_x F(\lambda_1, 0) \notin GL(X, Y)$ .
- (3) The closure of PC intersects the boundary of  $\Lambda$ .

### 6.2 A concrete example

In practice, the application of Theorem 6.1 consists of this: first, one identifies solutions of a given problem as the zeroes of a  $C^1$  map F depending on a parameter  $\lambda$ . Then one tries to single out admissible intervals for this map F. To this aim, one often uses the asymptotic behavior of the problem. Roughly speaking, if F "tends" at infinity in a suitable sense to another map with a simpler structure (for example an autonomous structure), and this limit map has no non-trivial zeroes for a certain range  $\Lambda$  of the parameter  $\lambda$ , then  $\Lambda$  is admissible for F. The last step is to find a suitable value  $\lambda_0 \in \Lambda$  from which a global branch of solutions can bifurcate.

These ideas have been applied to nonlinear elliptic differential equations ([73]), and we focus here on the case of hamiltonian systems, which present an easier technical framework.

Precisely, let us introduce the hamiltonian  $H: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  as

$$H(t, u, v, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ v^2 + \lambda u^2 + a(t)u^2 \right\} - \frac{|u|^{\sigma+2}}{(\sigma+2)(1+e^{-t})} + \frac{u^2v^2}{2(e^t+1)}, (6.4)$$

where  $\sigma > 0$ ,  $a \in C(\mathbb{R})$  is non-negative, not identically zero, and

$$\lim_{|t| \to +\infty} a(t) = 0. \tag{6.5}$$

We look for solutions of the system

$$\begin{cases} Jx' = \nabla H(t, x, \lambda) \\ \lim_{|t| \to \infty} |x(t)| = 0 \end{cases}$$
 (6.6)

where  $x = (u, v) \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^2)$ , or, more explicitely,

$$\begin{cases} -v' = \lambda u + a(t)u - \frac{1}{1 + e^{-t}} |u|^{\sigma} u \\ u' = v + \frac{u^2 v}{1 + e^t}. \end{cases}$$

Define

$$H^{+}(t, u, v, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \{v^{2} + \lambda u^{2}\} - \frac{|u|^{\sigma+2}}{\sigma + 2},$$

$$H^{-}(t, u, v, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \{v^{2} + \lambda u^{2}\} + \frac{u^{2}v^{2}}{2},$$

$$g^{+}(u, v, \lambda) = (\lambda u - |u|^{\sigma} u, v)$$

$$g^{-}(u, v, \lambda) = (\lambda u + uv^{2}, v + u^{2}v)$$

$$A_{\lambda}(t) = D_{(u,v)}^{2} H(t, 0, 0, \lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda + a(t) & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A_{\lambda}^{\pm} = D_{(u,v)} g^{\pm}(0, 0, \lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The  $q^{\pm}$  and  $H^{\pm}$  verify

- (1)  $q^+(t,0,\lambda) = q^-(t,0,\lambda) = 0$  for all  $t,\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$
- (2)  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \{D_{\xi}^2 H(t,\xi,\lambda) D_{\xi} g^+(t,\xi,\lambda)\} = \lim_{t\to\infty} \{D_{\xi}^2 H(t,\xi,\lambda) D_{\xi} g^+(t,\xi,\lambda)\}$
- $D_{\xi}g^{-}(t,\xi,\lambda)\} = 0, \text{ uniformly for } \xi = (u,v) \text{ in bounded subsets of } \mathbb{R}^{2}$ (3)  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \{H(t,\xi,\lambda) H^{+}(t,\xi,\lambda)\} = \lim_{t\to-\infty} \{H(t,\xi,\lambda) H^{-}(t,\xi,\lambda)\} = 0$  uniformly for  $\xi$  in bounded subsets of  $\mathbb{R}^{2}$

By (6.5),  $H^{\pm}$  play the rôle of the problems at infinity we described above. We will apply Theorem 6.1 with  $X = H^1(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^2), Y = L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^2),$ 

$$F(\lambda, x) = Jx' - \nabla H(\cdot, x(\cdot), \lambda).$$

We will also check that an admissible interval for this F is  $\Lambda = (-\infty, 0)$ . We state and prove the main theorem concerning the system (6.6).

Theorem 6.2. Define

$$\lambda_0 = \inf \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\varphi'|^2 - a(t)|\varphi|^2 \mid \varphi \in H^1(\mathbb{R}) \wedge \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\varphi|^2 = 1 \right\}.$$
 (6.7)

Then a global branch of homoclinic solutions of (6.6) bifurcates at  $\lambda_0$  in the sense of Theorem 6.1 with  $\Lambda=(-\infty,0)$ .

*Proof.* We will apply the criterion of Proposition 6.1. It is immediate to prove that  $F \in C^1(\mathbb{R} \times H^1, L^2)$ , from the very definition of the Fréchet derivative. We define  $F^{\pm} : \mathbb{R} \times H^1 \to L^2$  as

$$F^{\pm}(\lambda, x) = Jx' - \nabla H^{\pm}(\cdot, x(\cdot), \lambda),$$

where, as above, x = (u, v). Similarly, we define

$$F^{\pm}(\lambda, x) = Jx' - \nabla H^{\pm}(\cdot, x(\cdot), \lambda).$$

We claim that  $\Lambda = (-\infty, 0)$  is an admissible interval for F.

First step:  $D_x F(\lambda, 0) \in \Phi_0(H^1, L^2)$  for all  $\lambda < 0$ . Let  $L = D_x F(\lambda, 0)$ , namely

$$Lx(t) = Jx'(t) - A_{\lambda}(t)x(t)$$

The linear operator L is trivially bounded and also self-adjoint. From well-known results of linear functional analysis, L is Fredholm of index zero provided  $\operatorname{rge}(L)$  is closed. With this in mind, let  $f \in L^2$  and suppose that there exists a sequence  $\{f_n\} \subset \operatorname{rge} L$  such that  $||f - f_n||_2 \to 0$ . Let  $\{x_n\} \subset H^1$  be such that  $Lx_n = f_n$ .

Let P denote the orthogonal projection of  $L^2$  onto  $\ker L$  and set Q = I - P. Then  $Qx_n = x_n - Px_n \in H^1$  and  $Qx_n \in [\ker(L)]^{\perp}$ , the orthogonal complement of  $\ker L$  in  $L^2$ . Setting

$$u_n = Qx_n$$
 we have that  $u_n \in H^1 \cap [\ker(L)]^{\perp}$  and  $Lu_n = f_n$ .

Let us prove that the sequence  $\{u_n\}$  is bounded in  $H^1$ . For this we use  $S^{\pm}: H^1 \to L^2$  to denote the bounded linear operators defined by

$$S^{\pm}x=Jx'-A^{\pm}_{\lambda}x \text{ for all } x\in H^1.$$

The two operators  $S^+:H^1\to L^2$  and  $S^-:H^1\to L^2$  are isomorphisms because

$$A_{\lambda}^{\pm} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and the spectrum of the matrix

$$J\left(\begin{array}{c}\lambda \ 0\\0 \ 1\end{array}\right)$$

is

$$\sigma\left(J\left(\begin{array}{cc}\lambda&0\\0&1\end{array}\right)\right) = \begin{cases} \{\pm \mathrm{i}\sqrt{\lambda}\} & \text{ if } \lambda>0,\\ \{0\} & \text{ if } \lambda=0,\\ \{\pm\sqrt{|\lambda|}\} & \text{ if } \lambda<0. \end{cases}$$

Hence this spectrum is, for  $\lambda < 0$ , disjoint from i $\mathbb{R}$ , the imaginary axis; by a standard result (see [54, 60]), this implies that  $S^{\pm}$  are both isomorphisms.

So there exists a constant k such that

$$||S^{\pm}x||_2 \ge k ||x|| \text{ for all } x \in H^1.$$
 (6.8)

Supposing that  $||u_n|| \to \infty$ , we set  $w_n = \frac{u_n}{||u_n||}$ . Then  $\{w_n\} \subset H^1$  with  $||w_n|| = 1$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Passing to a subsequence, we can suppose that  $w_n \to w$  weakly in  $H^1$ , and hence that  $Lw_n \to Lw$  weakly in  $L^2$ . Furthermore,

$$Lw_n = \frac{Lu_n}{\|u_n\|} = \frac{f_n}{\|u_n\|}$$
 and so  $\|Lw_n\|_2 = \frac{\|f_n\|_2}{\|u_n\|} \to 0$ 

since  $||f_n||_2 \to ||f||_2$  and  $||u_n|| \to \infty$ . Thus Lw = 0. But  $w_n \in H^1 \cap [\ker(L)]^{\perp}$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , from which it follows that  $w \in H^1 \cap [\ker(L)]^{\perp}$ . Thus w = 0 and  $w_n \to 0$  weakly in  $H^1$ . Consequently,

 $w_n \to 0$  uniformly on [-R, R] for any  $R \in (0, \infty)$ .

But, for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$Jw'_n(t) = A_{\lambda}(t)w_n(t) + \frac{f_n(t)}{\|u_n\|}$$

and so

$$||w_n'||_{L^2(-R,R)} \le \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} ||A_\lambda(t)|| ||w_n||_{L^2(-R,R)} + \frac{||f_n||_2}{||u_n||},$$

showing that  $||w_n'||_{L^2(-R,R)} \to 0$  as  $n \to \infty$ , for all  $R \in (0,\infty)$ . In particular,

$$||w_n||_{H^1(-R,R)} \to 0$$
 as  $n \to \infty$ .

Now choose any  $\varepsilon > 0$ . There is a constant  $r \in (0, \infty)$  such that

$$|A_{\lambda}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{+}| \leq \varepsilon$$
 for all  $t \geq r$  and  $|A_{\lambda}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{-}| \leq \varepsilon$  for all  $t \leq -r$ .

Choose a constant  $R>r+\frac{1}{\varepsilon}$  and a function  $\varphi\in C^1(\mathbb{R})$  such that

 $0 \le \varphi(t) \le 1$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\varphi(t) = 0$  for  $t \le r$ ,  $\varphi(t) = 1$  for  $t \ge R$  and  $|\varphi'(t)| \le \varepsilon$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Consider now the function  $z_n(t) = \varphi(t)w_n(t)$ . Clearly  $z_n \in H^1$  and

$$S^{+}z_{n}(t) = \varphi'(t)Jw_{n}(t) + \varphi(t)Jw'_{n}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{+}z_{n}(t)$$

$$= \varphi'(t)Jw_{n}(t) + \varphi(t)Lw_{n}(t) + \varphi(t)\{A_{\lambda}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{+}\}w_{n}(t)$$

$$= \varphi'(t)Jw_{n}(t) + \varphi(t)\frac{f_{n}(t)}{||u_{n}||} + \varphi(t)\{A_{\lambda}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{+}\}w_{n}(t).$$

Thus,

$$||S^{+}z_{n}||_{2} \leq \varepsilon ||w_{n}||_{2} + \frac{||f_{n}||_{2}}{||u_{n}||} + \sup_{t \geq r} |A_{\lambda}(t) - A_{\lambda}^{+}| ||w_{n}||_{2}$$
$$\leq \varepsilon + \frac{||f_{n}||_{2}}{||u_{n}||} + \varepsilon$$

since  $||w_n||_2 \le 1$ . Hence, by (6.8)

$$||w_n||_{H^1(R,\infty)} = ||z_n||_{H^1(R,\infty)} \le ||z_n|| \le \frac{1}{k} \{2\varepsilon + \frac{||f_n||_2}{||u_n||} \}.$$

A similar argument, using  $\varphi(-t)w_n(t)$  instead of  $z_n$ , shows that

$$||w_n||_{H^1(-\infty,-R)} \le \frac{1}{k} \{2\varepsilon + \frac{||f_n||_2}{||u_n||} \}.$$

Finally, we have shown that, for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$||w_n||^2 = ||w_n||_{H^1(-\infty,-R)}^2 + ||w_n||_{H^1(-R,R)}^2 + ||w_n||_{H^1(R,\infty)}^2$$

$$\leq \frac{2}{k^2} \left\{ 2\varepsilon + \frac{||f_n||_2}{||u_n||} \right\}^2 + ||w_n||_{H^1(-R,R)}^2$$

and, letting  $n \to \infty$ ,

$$\limsup_{n \to \infty} ||w_n||^2 \le \frac{2}{k^2} \{2\varepsilon\}^2$$

since  $||w_n||^2_{H^1(-R,R)} \to 0$ ,  $||f_n||_2 \to ||f||_2$  and  $||u_n|| \to \infty$ . But  $||w_n|| \equiv 1$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$  can be chosen so that  $\frac{2}{k^2} \{2\varepsilon\}^2 < 1$ . This contradiction establishes the boundedness of the sequence  $\{u_n\}$  in  $H^1$ .

By passing to a subsequence, we can now suppose that  $u_n \to u$  weakly in  $H^1$ , and consequently that  $Lu_n \to Lu$  weakly in  $L^2$ . However,  $Lu_n = f_n$  and  $||f_n - f||_2 \to 0$ , showing that Lu = f. This proves that  $\operatorname{rge} L$  is a closed subspace of  $L^2$  and we have shown that  $D_x F(\lambda, 0) \in \Phi_0(H^1, L^2)$ .

Second step: the properness of F.

In the sequel, we will use the following statement, whose proof is omitted and can be found in our paper [80]: if  $D_x F(\lambda, 0) \in \Phi_0(H^1, L^2)$ , then  $D_x F(\lambda, x) \in \Phi_0(H^1, L^2)$  for all  $x \in H^1$ .

The next step is to show that F is a proper map on the class of closed and bounded subsets of  $\Lambda \times H^1$ . Hence, let us fix a compact subset  $K \subset L^2$  and a closed, bounded subset  $W \subset \Lambda \times H^1$ , in such a way that

$$-\infty < \inf PW < \sup PW < 0.$$

Choose any sequence  $\{(\lambda_n, x_n)\}$  from  $F^{-1}(K) \cap W$ ; we may assume that

$$\lambda_n \to \lambda \le \sup PW < 0$$
,

$$||F(\lambda_n, x_n) - y||_2 \to 0$$

for some  $y \in L^2$ . Now, take any  $x \in W$  and any  $\lambda, \mu$  in  $\Lambda$ . Then

$$||F(\lambda, x) - F(\mu, x)||_2 = ||D_x H(\cdot, x, \lambda) - D_x H(\cdot, x, \mu)||_2$$

and

$$D_x H(\cdot, x, \lambda) - D_x H(\cdot, x, \mu) = (\lambda - \mu) \int_0^1 D_\lambda D_{(u,v)} H(\cdot, x, s\lambda + (1 - s)\mu) \, ds.$$

Set  $L=\sup_{x\in W}\|x\|_{\infty}<\infty,$  since W is bounded in  $H^1.$  If  $K=\sqrt{L+|\lambda|+1},$  then

$$||F(\lambda, x) - F(\mu, x)||_2 \le C(K)||x||_2|\lambda - \mu|$$

for some constant C(K) > 0 depending only on K. We have thus proved that the family  $\{F(\cdot,x_n)\}_{n\geq 1}$  is equicontinuous at every point  $\lambda\in\Lambda$ . This immediately implies that

$$||F(\lambda, x_n) - y||_2 \to 0.$$

Now we "freeze"  $\lambda$ . Since W is bounded, we may assume that

$$x_n \rightharpoonup x \in H^1$$
.

We claim that: for all  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists R > 0 such that for all integers  $n \ge 1$  and all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $|t| \ge R$ , there results

$$|x_n(t)| \le \varepsilon$$
.

Suppose this is not true. By a simple reasoning, the sequence  $\{x_n\}$  must slip off to infinity. More precisely, one of the following conditions must be true:

- (1) There is a sequence  $\{l_k\} \subset \mathbb{Z}$  with  $\lim_{k\to\infty} l_k = \infty$  and a subsequence  $\{x_{n_k}\}$  of  $\{x_n\}$  such that  $\widetilde{x_k} = \tau_{l_k}(x_{n_k}) = x_{n_k}(\cdot + l_k)$  converges weakly in  $H^1$  to an element  $\widetilde{x} \neq 0$
- (2) There is a sequence  $\{l_k\} \subset \mathbb{Z}$  with  $\lim_{k\to\infty} l_k = -\infty$  and a subsequence  $\{x_{n_k}\}$  of  $\{x_n\}$  such that  $\widetilde{x_k} = \tau_{l_k}(x_{n_k}) = x_{n_k}(\cdot + l_k)$  converges weakly in  $H^1$  to an element  $\widetilde{x} \neq 0$

To fix ideas, let us suppose that  $\{x_n\}$  has the property (1). The invariance by translation of the Lebesgue measure implies that  $||F(\lambda, x_n) - y||_2 = ||\tau_{l_k}(F(\lambda, x_n) - y)||_2$  so

$$||\tau_{l_k}(F(\lambda, x_{n_k})) - \widetilde{y_k}||_2 \to 0$$
 where  $\widetilde{y_k}(t) = y(t + l_k)$ 

For any  $\omega \in (0, \infty)$ , it is easy to show that

$$\|\tau_{l_k}(F(\lambda, x_{n_k})) - \tau_{l_k}(F^+(\lambda, x_{n_k}))\|_{L^2(-\omega, \omega)} \to 0 \text{ as } k \to \infty.$$

Hence

$$\|\tau_{l_k}(F^+(\lambda, x_{n_k})) - \widetilde{y_k}\|_{L^2(-\omega, \omega)} \to 0 \text{ as } k \to \infty.$$

But

$$\tau_{l_k}(F^+(\lambda, x_{n_k}))(t) = Jx'_{n_k}(t + l_k) - g^+(x_{n_k}(t + l_k), \lambda)$$
  
=  $J\widetilde{x'_k}(t) - g^+(\widetilde{x_k}(t), \lambda) = F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k})(t)$ 

because  $g^+$  is independent of t. Consequently,

$$\|F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k}) - \widetilde{y_k}\|_{L^2(-\omega, \omega)} \to 0 \text{ as } k \to \infty,$$

for all  $\omega \in (0, \infty)$ . Since the sequence  $\{F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k}) - \widetilde{y_k}\}$  is bounded in  $L^2$ , this implies that  $F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k}) - \widetilde{y_k} \rightharpoonup 0$  weakly in  $L^2$ . But  $\widetilde{y_k} \rightharpoonup 0$  weakly in  $L^2$  by standard results in functional analysis, so we now have that  $F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k}) \rightharpoonup 0$  weakly in  $L^2$ . However, the weak sequential continuity of  $F^+(\lambda, \cdot): H^1 \to L^2$  implies that

$$F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x_k}) \rightharpoonup F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x})$$
 weakly in  $L^2$ ,

so we must have  $F^+(\lambda, \widetilde{x}) = 0$ . We now show that this implies  $x \equiv 0$ , the desired contradiction. Notice that  $x \in C^1(\mathbb{R})$ , and set

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\frac{d}{dt}\langle Cx(t), x(t)\rangle = 2\langle Cx(t), x'(t)\rangle = \lambda u(t)^2 - |u|^{\sigma+2} + v^2 > 0$$

whenever x=(u,v) is not identically zero. Since  $\lim_{|t|\to\infty}|x(t)|=0$  because  $x\in H^1$ , then  $\langle Cx(t),x(t)\rangle\equiv 0$ . This implies that  $\langle JCx(t),g^+(x(t),\lambda)\rangle=0$  for all  $t\in\mathbb{R}$ . Finally, x(t)=0 for all  $t^1$ 

By combining the Sobolev imbedding  $H^1 \subset L^{\infty}$  on bounded sets and the claim we have just proved, it is immediate to obtain that

$$||x_n - x||_{\infty} \to 0.$$

Hence we have proved that  $F(\lambda, \cdot)$  is a proper map on the bounded subsets of  $H^1$ . Hence there must be a subsequence, still denoted by  $\{x_n\}$ , such that

$$x_n \to x$$
 strongly in  $H^1$ .

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Of course, the same reasoning would apply to case (2).

But then  $(\lambda_n, x_n) \to (\lambda, x)$  strongly, and in particular  $(\lambda, x) \in W$  because W is closed. This finally proves that  $F^{-1}(K) \subset W$  is compact in  $H^1$ , and also that  $\Lambda = (-\infty, 0)$  is admissible for F.

Third step: the choice of  $\lambda_0$ .

It is well-known (see [64], theorem 11.5) that  $\lambda_0$  defined in (6.7) belongs to  $(-\infty,0)$  and that there exists an element  $\varphi_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R})$  such that

$$\varphi_0(t) > 0$$
 for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\lambda_0 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \varphi(t)_0^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \varphi_0'(t)^2 - a(t)\varphi_0(t)^2 dt$ .

Furthermore,  $\varphi_0 \in H^2(\mathbb{R}) \cap C^2(\mathbb{R})$  and satisfies the equation

$$\varphi''(t) + \{\lambda_0 + a(t)\}\varphi(t).$$

Setting  $x_0 = (\varphi_0, \varphi'_0)$ , we find that  $\ker D_x F(\lambda_0, 0) = \operatorname{span}\{x_0\}$ . Finally we observe that

$$D_{\lambda}D_{(u,v)}^{2}H(t,0,0,\lambda) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We are now ready to prove that the statements of Proposition 6.1 apply with  $A(\lambda) = D_x F(\lambda, 0)$  and the selected value  $\lambda_0$ . Indeed, since ker  $A(\lambda_0)$  is one-dimensional,

$$A'(\lambda_0)[\ker A(\lambda_0) \cap \operatorname{rge} A(\lambda_0) = \emptyset.$$

Moreover, codim  $\operatorname{rge} A(\lambda_0) = \dim \ker A(\lambda_0)$  because  $A(\lambda_0)$  is Fredholm of index zero. Since

$$A'(\lambda_0)[\ker D_x F(\lambda_0,0)] = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} u \mid u \in \ker D_x F(\lambda_0,0) \right\},\,$$

 $A'(\lambda_0)[\ker A(\lambda_0)]$  and  $\operatorname{rge} A(\lambda_0)$  are complementary in  $L^2$ :

$$A'(\lambda_0)[\ker A(\lambda_0)] \oplus \operatorname{rge} A(\lambda_0) = L^2.$$

In our situation,  $\pi(D_x F(\lambda_0, 0) \mid [\lambda_0 - \varepsilon, \lambda_0 + \varepsilon]) = (-1)^1 = -1$ , and Theorem 6.1 applies.

### 6.3 The general result

The topological degree allows us to handle more general hamiltonian systems like

$$Jx'(t) = \nabla H(t, x(t), \lambda)$$
(6.9)

where  $x \in H^1(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^{2N})$ , and  $H: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2N} \times \mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies

- (H1)  $H \in C(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2N} \times \mathbb{R})$  with  $H(t,\cdot,\lambda) \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^{2N})$  and  $D_{\varepsilon}H(t,0,\lambda) = 0$ for all  $t, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}$
- (H2) The partial derivatives  $D_{\xi}H, D_{\xi}^2H, D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}H, D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}^2H$  and  $D_{\xi}D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}H$
- exist and are continuous on  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2N} \times \mathbb{R}$ . (H3) For each  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $D_{\xi}H(\cdot,\cdot,\lambda): \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2N} \to \mathbb{R}^{2N}$  is a  $C_{\xi}^1$ -bundle map, and  $D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}^{2}H: \mathbb{R}\times(\mathbb{R}^{2N}\times\mathbb{R})\to\mathbb{R}$  is a  $C_{(\xi,\lambda)}^{0}$ -bundle map.
- (H4)  $D_{\xi}^{2}H(\cdot,0,0)$  and  $D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}^{2}H(\cdot,0,0) \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ .
- $(\mathrm{H}^{\infty})$  For all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ , there exist two  $C_{\xi}^{1}$ -bundle maps  $g^{+}(\cdot,\cdot,\lambda)$  and  $q^-(\cdot,\cdot,\lambda): \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2N} \to \mathbb{R}^{2N}$  such that
  - (1)  $g^+(t,0,\lambda) = g^-(t,0,\lambda) = 0$  for all  $t,\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$
  - (2)  $\lim_{t\to\infty} \{D_{\xi}^2 H(t,\xi,\lambda) D_{\xi}g^+(t,\xi,\lambda)\} = \lim_{t\to-\infty} \{D_{\xi}^2 H(t,\xi,\lambda) D_{\xi}g^+(t,\xi,\lambda)\}$  $D_{\xi}g^{-}(t,\xi,\lambda)\}=0$ , uniformly for  $\xi$  in bounded subsets of  $\mathbb{R}^{2N}$
  - (3)  $g^{+}(t+T^{+},\xi,\lambda) g^{+}(t,\xi,\lambda) = g^{-}(t+T^{-},\xi,\lambda) g^{-}(t,\xi,\lambda) = 0$  for some  $T^{+},T^{-}>0$  and for all  $(t,\xi)\in\mathbb{R}\times\mathbb{R}^{2N}$ .

We point out that  $(H^{\infty})$  describes again the "problems at infinity".

Theorem 6.3 ([80]). Suppose that (H1) to (H4) and ( $H^{\infty}$ ) are satisfied. An open interval  $\Lambda$  is admissible provided that, for all  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ , the following conditions are satisfied.

(1) The periodic, linear Hamiltonian systems

$$Jx' - A_{\lambda}^{+}(t)x = 0$$
 and  $Jx' - A_{\lambda}^{-}(t)x = 0$ 

have no characteristic multipliers on the unit circle.

(2) The asymptotic limit  $g^+$  satisfies the following condition: If there is a real, symmetric  $2N \times 2N$ -matrix C such that

$$\langle g^+(t,\xi,\lambda), JC\xi \rangle > 0 \text{ for all } \xi \in \mathbb{R}^{2N} \setminus \{0\},$$

then  $\{x \in H^1 : F^+(\lambda, x) = 0\} = \{0\}.$ 

(3) The asymptotic limit  $g^-$  satisfies the following condition: If there is a real, symmetric  $2N \times 2N$ -matrix C such that

$$\langle g^{-}(t,\xi,\lambda), JC\xi \rangle > 0 \text{ for all } \xi \in \mathbb{R}^{2N} \setminus \{0\},$$

then  $\{x \in H^1 : F^-(\lambda, x) = 0\} = \{0\}.$ 

(4) There is a point  $\lambda_0 \in \Lambda$  such that

(i)  $k = \dim N(\lambda_0)$  is odd where  $N(\lambda) = \{u \in C^2(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^{2N}) : Ju'(t) - u'(t) \}$  $A_{\lambda}(t)u(t) \equiv 0 \text{ and } \lim_{|t| \to \infty} u(t) = 0\},$ 

(ii) for every  $u \in N(\lambda_0) \setminus \{0\}$  there exists  $v \in N(\lambda_0)$  such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \langle T_{\lambda_0}(t)u(t), v(t)\rangle dt \neq 0 \text{ where } T_{\lambda}(t) = D_{\lambda}D_{\xi}^2 H(t, 0, \lambda) \text{ and }$$

(iii) dim $\{T_{\lambda_0}(\cdot)u: u \in N(\lambda_0)\}=k.$ 

Then a global branch of homoclinic solutions of (6.9) bifurcates at  $\lambda_0$  in the sense of Theorem 6.1 with  $X = H^1$  and  $Y = L^2$ .

## 100 6 Homoclinic solutions of Hamiltonian systems

The proof of this theorem follows the same lines of the one presented for the concrete example. We refer to [80] for the details.

### References

- 1. R. A. Adams. Sobolev spaces. Academic Press, 1975.
- A. Ambrosetti. Critical points and nonlinear variational problems. Bulletin de la Societé Mathématique de France, supplement, 1992
- A. Ambrosetti, M. Badiale, Homoclinics: Poincaré-Melnikov type results via a variational approach. Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire, 15, (1998), no. 2, 233-252.
- 4. A. Ambrosetti, M. Badiale, Variational perturbative methods and bifurcation of bound states from the essential spectrum. Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh Sect. A, 128, (1998), no.6, 1131-1161.
- A. Ambrosetti, M. Berti, Homoclinics and complex dynamics in slowly oscillating systems, Discr. Cont. Dyn. Systems, 4-3 (1998), 393-403
- A. Ambrosetti, M. Badiale, S. Cingolani, Semiclassical states of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Arch. Rational Mech. Anal. 140 (1997), 285-300.
- 7. A. Ambrosetti, V. Coti Zelati, I. Ekeland, Symmetry breaking in Hamiltonian systems, J. Differ. Equations, 67 (1987), 165–184.
- A. Ambrosetti, A. Malchiodi, On the symmetric scalar curvature problem on S<sup>n</sup>, J. Differential Equations, 170 no. 1 (2001), 228-245
- A. Ambrosetti, A. Malchiodi, W.-N. Ni, Solutions, concentrating on a sphere, to symmetric singularly perturbed problems, C.R.A.S. Paris, Ser. I, 335 (2002), 145-150.
- A. Ambrosetti, A. Malchiodi, S. Secchi, Multiplicity results for some nonlinear Schrödinger equations with potentials, Arch. Rat. Mech. Anal. 159, (2001), 253-271.
- 11. A. Ambrosetti, P. Rabinowitz, Dual variational methods in critical point theory and applications, J. Functional Anal. 14 (1973), 349–381.
- 12. A. Ambrosetti, G. Prodi. A primer of nonlinear analysis. Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- 13. M. Badiale, A. Pomponio, in preparation.
- 14. M. Badiale, G. Tarantello, A Sobolev-Hardy inequality with applications to a nonlinear elliptic equation arising in astrophysics, Archive Rat. Mech. Analysis 163 (2002), 4, 259–293.
- A. Bahri, Y. Y. Li, On a min-max procedure for the existence of a positive solution for certain scalar field equations in R<sup>n</sup>, Revista Matematica Iberoamericana, 6 (1990), 1-15.
- 16. V. Benci, F. Giannoni, On the existence of closed geodesics on noncompact Riemannian manifolds, Duke Math. Journal, 68, no. 2, (1992), 195-215.
- 17. A. K. Ben Naoum, C. Troestler, M. Willem, Extrema problems with critical Sobolev exponents on unbounded domains. Nonlinear Analysis T. M. A. 26 (1996), 823–833.

- 18. M. Berti. Perturbation techniques in critical point theory and chaotic dynamics in Hamiltonian systems. Ph.D. thesis. Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa, 1998.
- 19. M. Berti, P. Bolle, Homoclinics and chaotic behavior for perturbed second order systems, Ann. Mat. Pura Appl. 176 (1999), 323-378.
- 20. R. Bott, Lectures on Morse theory, old and new, Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 7, no. 2, (1982), 331-358.
- R. Bott, Nondegenerate critical manifolds, Annals of Math., 60-2 (1954), 248.261.
- 22. H. Brezis, E. Lieb, A relation between pointwise convergence of functions and convergence of functionals, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 88 (1983), 486-490.
- 23. H. Brezis, L. Nirenberg, Positive solutions of nonlinear elliptic equations involving critical Sobolev exponent, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 36, (1983), 437–477.
- 24. R. Brummelhuis, Exponential decay in the semiclassical limit for eigenfunctions of Schrödinger operators with magnetic fields and potentials which degenerate at infinity, Comm. Part. Diff. Eqs. 16, (1991), 1489–1502.
- 25. C. Carminati, Some perturbation results for non-linear problems, Rend. Mat. Acc. Lincei 4 (1993), 243-250.
- J. Chabrowski. Weak convergence methods for semilinear elliptic equations. World Scientific, 1999.
- 27. K. C. Chang. Infinite dimensional Morse theory and multiple solution problems. Birkhäuser, 1993.
- 28. S. Cingolani, Semiclassical stationary states of nonlinear Schrödinger equations with an external magnetic field, Journal Diff. Eq., to appear
- S. Cingolani, M. Lazzo, Multiple semiclassical standing waves for a class of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Top. Meth. Nonlin. Anal., 10 (1997), 1-13.
- 30. S. Cingolani, M. Lazzo, Multiple positive solutions to nonlinear Schroedinger equations with competing potentials functions, J. Diff. Equations. 160 (2000), 118-138.
- S. Cingolani, M. Nolasco, Multi-peaks periodic semiclassical states for a class of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh, 128 (1998), 1249-1260.
- 32. S. Cingolani, S. Secchi, Semiclassical limit for nonlinear Schrödinger equations with electromagnetic fields, accettato per la pubblicazione dal Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications.
- 33. C.C. Conley, *Isolated invariant sets and the Morse index*, CBMS, Regional Conf. Series in Math, vol. **38** (1978).
- 34. C.C. Conley, E. Zehnder, The Birkhoff-Lewis fixed point theorem and a conjecture of V.I. Arnold, Inv. Math. (1983), 33-49.
- 35. M. Degiovanni. Istituzioni di Analisi Superiore. Notes available from http://www.dmf.unicatt.it/ degiova/download/dispense.html.
- 36. M. Del Pino, P. Felmer, Local mountain passes for semilinear elliptic problems in unbounded domains, Cal. Var. PDE, 4 (1996), 121-137.
- M. Del Pino, P. Felmer, O. Miyagaki, Existence of positive bound states of nonlinear Schrödinger equations with saddle-like potentials, Nonlin. Anal., 34 (1998), 979-989.
- 38. M. Do Carmo. Riemannian geometry. Birkhäuser.
- 39. B. Dubrovin, S. Novikov, A. Fomenko. Geometria Contemporanea. Editori Riuniti, vol. 3, 1989.
- 40. Edmunds, D.E. and Evans, W.D.: Spectral Theory and Differential Operators, Oxford University Press, Oxford 1987

- K. D. Elworthy, A. J. Tromba, Degree theory on Banach manifolds, Nonlin. functional Analysis, Proc. Sympos. Pure Math. 18 (1970), 86-94.
- 42. M. Esteban, P. L. Lions, Stationary solutions of nonlinear Schrödinger equations with an external magnetic field, in PDE and Calculus of Variations, in honor of E. De Giorgi, Birkhäuser, 1990.
- 43. Fitzpatrick, P.M.: Homotopy, linearization and bifurcation, Nonlinear Analysis TMA, 12 (1988), 171-184.
- 44. Fitzpatrick, P.M. and Pejsachowicz, J.: Parity and generalized multiplicity, Trans. AMS, 326 (1991), 281-305
- 45. Fitzpatrick, P.M., Pejsachowicz, J. and Rabier, P.J.: The degree of proper  $C^2$  Fredholm mappings I, J. reine angew. Math., 427(1992), 1-33
- 46. A. Floer, A. Weinstein, Nonspreading wave packets for the cubic Schroedinger equation with a bounded potential, J. Funct. Anal., 69 (1986), 397-408.
- 47. M. Grossi, Some results on a class of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Math. Zeit.
- 48. C. Gui, Existence of multi-bump solutions for nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Comm. PDE, 21 (1996), 787-820.
- 49. E. Hebey. Introduction à l'analyse non linéaire sur les variétés. Diderot editeur, 1997.
- 50. B. Helffer, On Spectral Theory for Schrödinger Operators with Magnetic Potentials, Advanced Studies in Pure Mathematics vol. 23, 113–141 (1994).
- B. Helffer, Semiclassical analysis for Schrödinger operator with magnetic wells, in Quasiclassical methods (J. Rauch, B. Simon Eds.). The IMA Volumes in Mathematics and its applications vol. 95, Springer-Verlag New-York 1997.
- B. Helffer, J. Sjöstrand, Effet tunnel pour l'équation de Schrödinger avec champ magnétique, Annali Scuola Normale Superiore di Pisa, 14 (1987), 625–657.
- 53. H. Hofer, A note on the topological degree at a critical point of mountain-pass type, Proc. A.M.S. 90 (1984), 309-315.
- Hsieh, P.-O. and Sibuya, Y.: Basic Theory of Ordinary Differential Equations, Springer-Verlag, Berlin 1999
- 55. O. Kavian. Introduction à la théorie des points critiques. Springer, 1993.
- 56. W. Klingenberg. Lectures on Closed geodesics. Springer Verlag, 1978.
- 57. W. Klingenberg. Riemannian Geometry. W.de Gruyter, 1995.
- 58. W. Klingenberg, Closed geodesics, Annals of Mathematics 89 (1969), 68-91.
- 59. K. Kurata, Existence and semi-classical limit of the least energy solution to a nonlinear Schrödinger equation with electromagnetic fields, Nonlinear Anal. 41, (2000), 763-778.
- 60. Joosten, R. Existence and bifurcation of homoclinic solutions for Hamiltonian systems, Thèse No 2157(2000), EPFL, Lausanne
- 61. R. Larsen. Functional Analysis: an introduction. Marcel Dekker, 1973.
- 62. M. C. Leung, Conformal Deformation of Warped Products and Scalar Curvature Functions on Open Manifolds, Bull. Sci. Math. 122 (1998), 369–398.
- 63. Y.Y. Li, On a singularly perturbed elliptic equation, Adv. Diff. Equat. 2 (1997), 955-980.
- 64. Lieb, E and Loss, M. Analysis, Graduate studies in mathematics #14, Am. Math. Soc. 2001
- 65. P. L. Lions, The concentration-compactness principle in the calculus of variations. The locally compact case. Part I, Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré 1 (1984), 109–145. Part II 223–283.

- 66. P. L. Lions, The concentration-compactness principle in the calculus of variations. The limit case. Part I Rev. Mat. Iberoamericana 1.1 (1985), 145–201. Part II 1.2, 45–121.
- 67. J. Margalef-Roig, E. Outerelo Dominguez. Differential topology. North Holland, 1992.
- 68. J. Mawhin, M. Willem. Critical point theory and Hamiltonian systems. Springer, 1989.
- Y. G. Oh, Existence of semiclassical bound states of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Comm. PDE, 13 (1988), 1499-1519.
- 70. R. Palais, Lusternik-Schnirelman theory on Banach manifolds, Topology 5 (1969), 115-132.
- 71. Pejsachowicz, J. and Rabier, P.J.: Degree theory for C<sup>1</sup> Fredholm mappings of index zero, J. Analyse Math., 76 (1998), 289-319
- 72. Rabier, P.J. and Stuart, C.A.: Fredholm and properness properties of quasilinear elliptic operators on  $\mathbb{R}^N$ , preprint 1998, to appear in Math. Nach.
- Rabier, P.J. and Stuart, C.A.: Global bifurcation for quasilinear elliptic equations on R<sup>N</sup>, Math. Z., 237 (2001), 85-124
- P. H. Rabinowitz, A note on the topological degree for potential operators, Journal of Math. Anal. Appl. 51 (1975), 483-492.
- 75. Rabinowitz, P.H.: Some global results for nonlinear eigenvalue problems, J. Functional Anal., 7(1971), 487-513
- 76. M. Renardy, R. C. Rogers. An introduction to partial differential equations. Springer, 1993.
- 77. J. T. Schwartz. Nonlinear functional analysis. Gordon and Breach, 1969.
- 78., S. Secchi, A note on closed geodesics for a class of non-compact Riemannian manifolds, Advanced Nonlinear Studies 1 (2001), 132-142.
- 79. S. Secchi, D. Smets, M. Willem, In preparation.
- 80. S. Secchi, C. A. Stuart, Global bifurcation of homoclinic solutions of hamiltonian systems, to appear on Discrete and Cont. Dynamical Systems.
- 81. M. Struwe. Variational methods. Third edition, Springer, 2001.
- 82. C. A. Stuart. Elliptic equations on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . In Nonlinear functional analysis and applications to differential equations. World Scientific, 1998.
- 83. Stuart, C.A.: Bifurcation into spectral gaps, supplement to the Bulletin of the Belgian Mathematical Society, 1995.
- 84. K. Tanaka, Periodic solutions for singular Hamiltonian systems and closed geodesics on non-compact Riemannian manifolds, Annales Institut H. Poincaré, Anal. non linéaire 17 no. 1, (2000)
- 85. G. Thorbergsson, Closed geodesics on non-compact Riemannian manifolds, Math. Z. 159 (1978), 249-258.
- 86. X.-F. Wang, On concentration of positive bound states of nonlinear Schroedinger equations, Comm. Math. Phys., 153 (1993), 229-244.
- 87. X.-F. Wang, B. Zeng, On concentration of positive bound states of nonlinear Schroedinger equations with competing potential functions, SIAM J. Math. Anal., 28 (1997), 633-655.
- 88. J. Weidmann. Linear operators in Hilbert space. Springer, 1980.
- 89. M. Willem. Analyse harmonique réelle. Hermann, 1995.
- 90. M. Willem. Minimax theorems, Birkhäuser, 1995.

.

